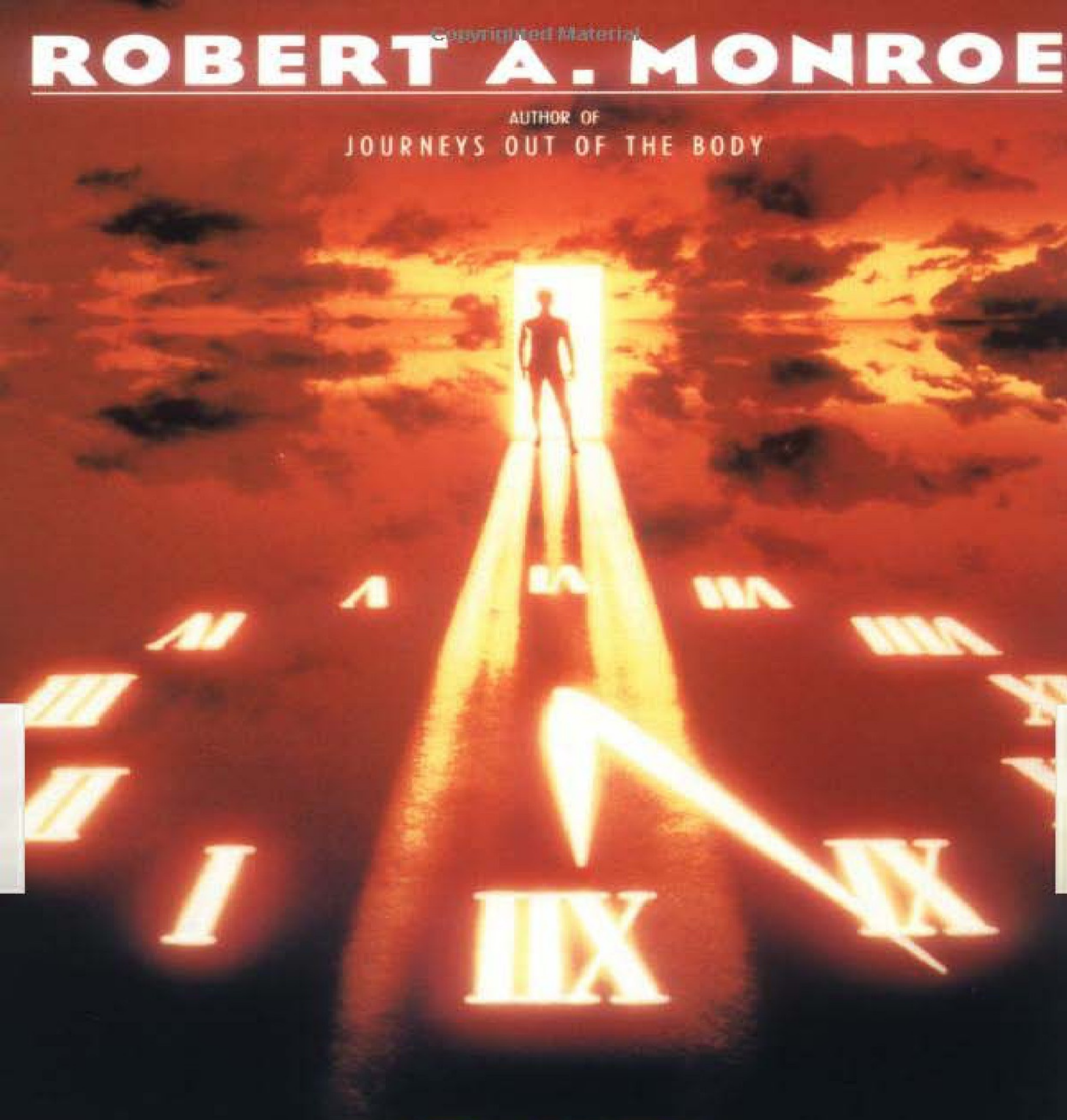
Copyrighted Material

ROBERT A. MONROE

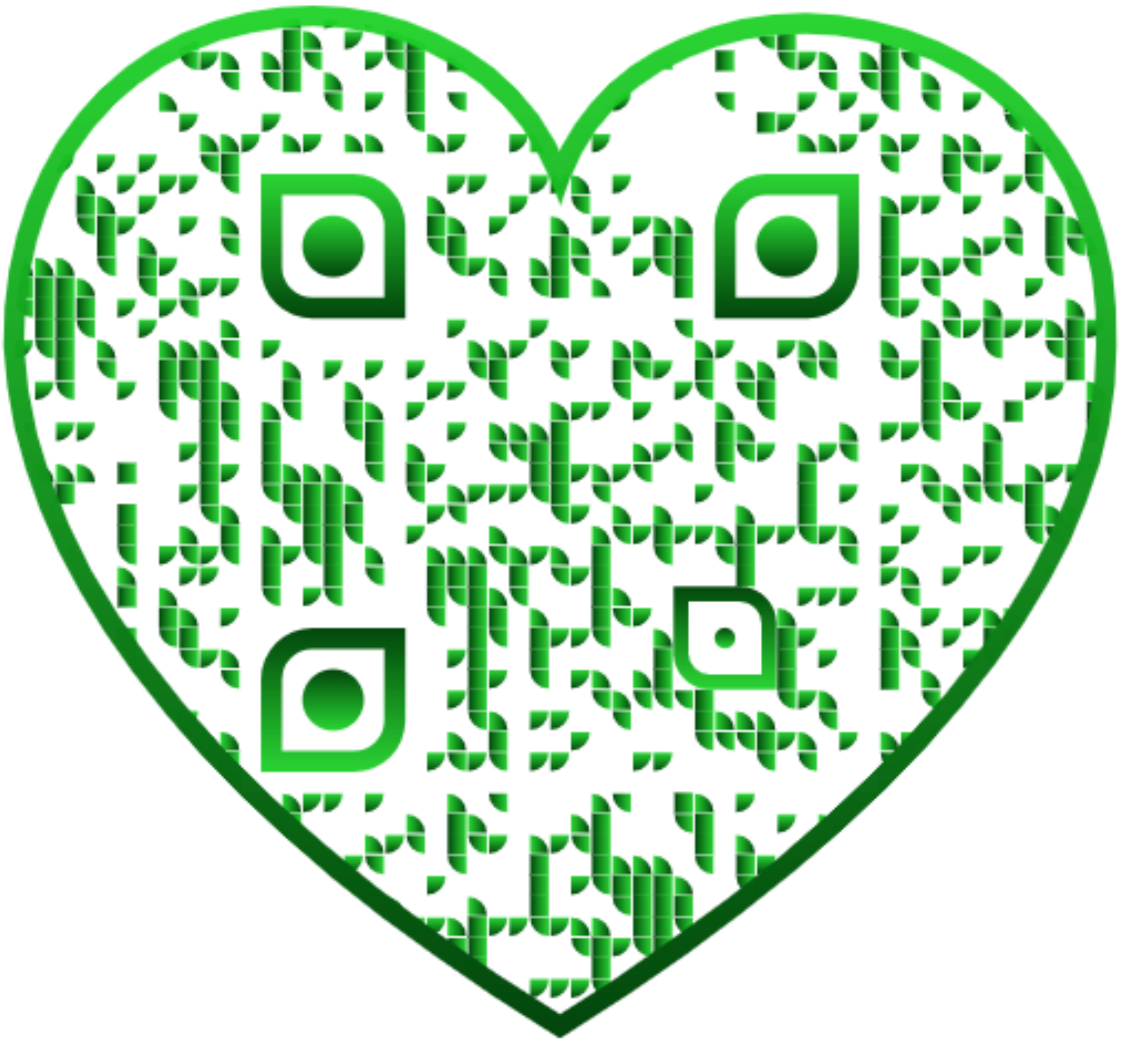
AUTHOR OF
JOURNEYS OUT OF THE BODY



FAR JOURNEYS

"*Far Journeys* is wonderful. It describes for the first time in understandable form the cycle of human existence through life and death."
—Elisabeth Kübler-Ross

Copyrighted Material



Copyrighted Material

ROBERT A. MONROE
AUTHOR OF
JOURNEYS OUT OF THE BODY
FAR JOURNEYS
"Far Journeys is wonderful. It describes for the first time in understandable form the cycle of human existence through life and death."
—Elisabeth Kübler-Ross

Also by Robert A. Monroe

Far Journeys

JOURNEYS OUT OF THE BODY

ROBERT A. MONROE

M A I N

STREET

BOOKS

DOUBLEDAY New York London Toronto Sydney Auckland

A M A I N S T R E E T BOOK

PUBLISHED BY DOUBLEDAY

DEDICATED TO:

a division of Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, Inc.

1540 Broadway, New York, New York 10036

Nancy Penn Monroe, much more than a wife,

whose constant and consistent love, support,

MAIN STREET BOOKS, DOUBLEDAY, and the portrayal of a building with a tree are sharing, and understanding were the indispensable trademarks of Doubleday, a division of Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing elements in the writing and completion of this

Group, Inc.

record.

Those interested in the activities of the Institute may write: The Monroe Institute Route 1, Box 175 Faber, Virginia 22938

The literally hundreds of others over the past

fifteen years who freely gave their time, energy, and

“The Out-of-Body Experience: A Phenomenological Typology Based on Questionnaire Responses,” by S. W. Twemlow, G. O. Gabbard, and F. C.

interest in so many different ways and without

Jones. The American Journal of Psychiatry, Vol. 139.4, pp. 450-55, 1982.

whom very little would have been accomplished.

Copyright (c) 1982, the American Psychiatric Association. Reprinted by permission.

“The OBE Psychophysiology of Robert A. Monroe” from With the Eyes of the Mind by Glen O. Gabbard and Stuart W. Twemlow.
Copyright (c) 1984

Praeger Publishers. Reprinted by permission.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data Monroe, Robert A.

Far journeys.

“A Main Street book”

1. Monroe, Robert A. 2. Psychical research—

Biography. 3. Out-of-Body experiences. I. Title.

BF1283.M582A29 1985 133.9‘01‘3 85-1633

ISBN 0-385-23182-2

Copyright (c) 1985 by Robert A. Monroe

An Eleanor Friede Book

All Rights Reserved

Printed in the United States of America

20 19 18 17 16 15

Flow Sheet

Prologue

Part I

Near Reaches

1

1.

Old Local Traffic

3

2.

Hemi-Sync et al.

16

3.

The Gateway Program

26

4.

Explorer Team I

37

5.

New Associations

50

6.

Segue

63

Part II

Far Reaches

75

7.

Surveys and Schematics

77

8.

Contact Point

91

9.

Rainbow Route

107

10.

Newfound Friend

124

11.

Rescue Mission

144

12.

Hearsay Evidence

157

13.

Shock Treatment

173

14.

One Easy Lesson

182

15.

Promised Plan

205

16.

The Gathering

228

Epilogue:

End Game

238

Appendices

The Out-of-Body Experience:

Most Frequently Asked Questions

and Answers

265

FLOW SHEET

II.

The OBE Psychophysiology of

Robert A. Monroe

By Stuart W. Twemlow, M.D.,

and Glen O. Gabbard, M.D.

271

Prologue

III.

The Out-of-Body Experience: Phe-

nomenology

By Stuart W. Twemlow, M.D.,

Glen O. Gabbard, M.D., and

Fowler C. Jones, Ed.D.

Paper Presented at the 1980

There seems to be an easy way to do—and a hard way. Given the choice, Annual Meeting of the American

all of us take the easy route simply because it’s more efficient, saves time Psychiatric Association, May 5-9,

and energy. If it’s too easy, some of us feel guilty. We get the uncomfortin San Francisco

able sense that we’re missing something if we don’t go the laborious, tried-About the Author

and-true pattern. If it's that easy, it must not be good, might even be sinful.

But after a while, the easy way becomes the ordinary way and we forget the old road. When you've lived in an area long enough to have traveled between two cities before the interstates and freeways were built, try the old familiar highway just once. You'll find once is enough. The start-and-stop congestion, the total disorder, the growing frustrations far over-shadow any remaining nostalgia you may have harbored. You have enough of such local traffic at the beginning and end of each run on the Interstate.

Now the problem. Suppose you met someone who had never driven on an interstate. All his life, he has driven only in local traffic. He's heard about such superhighways. He might even have seen one from a distance or heard the rumble of vehicles or smelled their exhaust fumes. He rationalizes any number of reasons why he hasn't and won't go interstate; he doesn't need to, he's satisfied the way he is; they travel too fast so it's not safe; you have to go out of your way to get on it; it's full of strangers from all over the place so you don't know whom you'll meet so you can't trust them; your car isn't in very good condition and it might break down and leave you stranded without anybody to help, in some lonely spot you never heard of. Maybe sometime you'll try it, but not right now.

Suppose you happened to see a construction order from the state highway department to begin demolition of the old highway so that

all local traffic will have to go interstate eventually, like it or not. What do you do?

What would you do? Nothing? Suppose the recalcitrant is an old and dear

PROLOGUE

PROLOGUE

friend. Then what? Your friend knows of the order but refuses to believe can't be angry at it for being on the path or being harder than a toe …

it. He can see the work crews beginning to form at the end of the old yes, now let's see if it works.

highway and he ignores their existence. Thus you know the intense (It is focus of attention, of consciousness, which is without diversion or trauma he will undergo when the old road is shut off, and he will be deviation. No other energy available to you as human is as powerful. As a carried kicking and screaming onto the Interstate.

lens will direct energy you call light, so you can use consciousness.) You decide to do something, anything you can. After your decision, Each time I hear something like that, I realize how far I have to go.

weeks, months—years—pass due to your own inertia. You have your own (You are doing very well, Mister Monroe. Your own recognition of such rationale. You don't know how to proceed. You don't know how to de-

percept is an indication.)

scribe the interstate in local traffic terms, and your friend understands only Hey, I got it! It's under the baseline … uh, except for this one saw-local traffic. Someone else will come along and do it for you, for your tooth, can't seem to hold onto it, and there's a smaller waveform on the sawtooth, can't get it put away.

friend.

(It is another form of rote, as you call it. Take it if you so desire. It may Finally, finally—you discover the stupidly simple answer. You and your be interesting to you.)

friend suffer from the same affliction but from different causes. It is iner-Sure, why not!

tia. Back in the old railroad days, a locomotive could pull only four or five (Click!)

cars at a time because if more cars than that were added, it would simply Going from local traffic to interstate does indeed require an entry or spin its drive wheels trying to get started. Inertia. Then a smart young acceleration lane to merge into the flow. If you can make the tools sup-thinker came along and invented the sliding coupler, which let the loco-plied by local traffic apply in the design and building of the ramp, so much motive pick up the slack—and inertia—one car at a time. Ask any freight the better. You need to remember especially the inertia factor—pick up conductor what it was like to be in a caboose on the tail end of a 100-car the slack on one loaded car at a time, start in low gear so you don't stall train when he highballs the engineer. Instantaneous zero to thirty miles

the engine, then shift smoothly; automatic transmissions don't know when per hour. It's the same with automobiles. The transmission is there to you need to shift. If the design is correct, your friend is cruising along the provide big torque in low gear to overcome inertia. Once under way at interstate long before the old highway is closed down.

cruising speed, power is required only to overcome wind resistance and You do the best you can.

road friction—and very little of it relatively. The hard case is the catapult launch on an aircraft carrier, which does the job in a hurry and not too Robert A. Monroe

gently. Guns are inertia-overcoming devices for bullets.

Faber, Virginia

It's doubtful that explosive or catapult methods to full-speed interstate 1985

in a different form will be less than confusing and bewildering, even with modification to local traEc standards. Take this as an illustration:

… I can't get the stuff under a null point, there ought to be a better way to do this!

(Your uncontrolled emotion of anger is using much of your energy. A very human response.)

A better way to do it … stuff can’t help being what it is, you kick a stone in your path and it hurts your toe, why get angry at the stone, you

Part I

1.

Old Local Traffic

If there is a first and obvious point to be made, I can report that I am still alive physically after twenty-five years of exploring personally the out-of-body experience. A little timeworn, but still more or less operational.

There were several moments when I was not so sure. However, some of the best medical authorities have assured me that the physical problems I have encountered have been simple cause-and-effect of living in the culture/civilization of mid-twentieth century America. Some take another position. I am still alive as a result of such OOBE activity. Take your pick.

So it would seem that one can practice “going out of the body” regularly and survive. Also, after having been tested periodically by experts, I can still make the statement that I am reasonably sane in a not so reasonably sane world. There are many people who do strange things and get away with it. A century ago, it might have been going over Niagara Falls in a barrel.

What is the out-of-body experience? For those who have not encountered the subject as yet, an out-of-body experience (OOBE) is a condition where you find yourself outside of your physical body, fully conscious and able to perceive and act as if you were

functioning physically—with several exceptions. You can move through space (and time?) slowly or apparently somewhere beyond the speed of light. You can observe, participate in events, make willful decisions based upon what you perceive and do.

You can move through physical matter such as walls, steel plates, concrete, earth, oceans, air, even atomic radiation without effort or effect.

You can go into an adjoining room without bothering to open the door.

You can visit a friend three thousand miles away. You can explore the moon, the solar system, and the galaxy if these interest you. Or —you can enter other reality systems only dimly perceived and theorized by our time/space consciousness.

It is not a new phenomenon. Recent surveys indicate some 25 percent FAR JOURNEYS

OLD LOCAL TRAFFIC

5

of our population remembers having at least one such experience. Man's Instead, I stubbornly began a search and research into the phenomenon history is full of reports of such events. In earlier literature, it was com-out of self-preservation and, as the fear and panic subsided, out of growing monly labeled "astral projection." I began by refusing to use this term, as curiosity. The trail took me

beyond conventional scientific circles (total it had an occult connotation and was certainly nonscientific by our stan-rejection), religions (“It’s the work of the devil”), parapsychology (“Inter-dards. Charles Tart, a psychologist friend, popularized the term “out-of-esting. Sorry, no data available”), and Eastern disciplines (“Come study at body experience” when we were working together in the sixties. In the our ashram in northern India for ten years”). This was chronicled in my past twenty years, it has become the accepted Western generic term for previous book, Journeys Out of the Body.

this particular state of being.

One thing is certain. The purpose of the previous book was many times Without any obvious reason, I began to “go” out of my body in the fall fulfilled. It brought thousands of letters from all parts of the world and of 1958. In the light of later historical events, it is important to state that among them many hundreds of people wrote their personal thanks for a no drugs or alcohol were involved. I was a nonuser of the former and an reassurance that they were not mentally deranged, were not so much alone infrequent imbiber of the latter.

after all with their “closet” secret experience that they could not explain, Several years ago, I attended a conference not too far from our former and, most important, that they were not necessarily candidates for the home in Westchester County, New York—the site of my first out-of-body psychiatric couch or mental hospital. That was the stated purpose of the experiences. As we drove by the house, I commented that the reason why original

book: to help just one person avoid such needless incarceration.

they began was still obscure.

I personally am bemused at the changes in these twenty-five years. In A psychologist friend riding with me took one look at the house, turned, most academic and intellectual societies, it is now quite acceptable to talk and smiled. “The answer is easy. It’s the house. Take a good look at it.”

about OOBEs. However, I’m sure that the great majority of people in our I stopped the car. The house looked the same. Green roof and stone.

culture are still unaware of this facet of their lives. In 1959 or 1960, I The new owner had maintained it nicely. I turned to my friend. “I don’t certainly would have derided the idea that I might give a talk on OOBEs see anything different.”

at the Smithsonian Institution. Or papers on the subject would be pre-

“The roof.” He pointed a finger upward. “It’s a perfect pyramid. More-sented before the American Psychiatric Association. But they happened.

over, it’s covered with copper just like the tops of the big ones in Egypt One of the most frequent approaches I hear reminds me very much of before the looters took over.”

the old and worn-out show-business routine about the question a producer I stared, dumbfounded.

usually puts to the job-seeking performer. He is listening to what he knows

“Pyramid power, Robert,” he went on. “You’ve read about it. You were already, that the actor appeared in The Great One in 1922, starred in living in a pyramid. That did it!”

Who Goes There? in 1938, won the Critics Award for his lead in Nose to Pyramid power? Well, maybe. There are reports and books that make Nose, and in 1949 played the role of Willie in What Makes Willie Weep.

claims about strange energies therein.

The producer interrupts and puts the very simple question: “That’s That the out-of-body experience frightened me then is a quantum un-great, but what have you done yesterday?”

derstatement. When it recurred, I was filled with panic-driven visions of And so it is. What have I been doing (out of body) since the publica-brain tumors and oncoming insanity. This led to extensive physical exami-.

tion of Journeys Out of the Body? The answer I usually give is this: Beginnations, all negative, followed by recommendations of psychotherapy for ning in the seventies, I began to experience a frustration, a limitation in

“minor hallucinatory dysfunction.” I discarded this diagnosis automati-my out-of-body activities. It is hard for some people to believe, I suppose, cally. Some of my best friends at the time were psychiatrists and psycholo-but such travels actually became boring. The early excitement had long gists with their own problems, albeit certainly more orthodox.

passed. It became an effort to participate in controlled tests, and because FAR JOURNEYS

OLD LOCAL TRAFFIC

it was an effort, I began to sense that the particular theme of “proof” was physical here-now consciousness is always a participant, better than 90

not part of my mode of operation. Moreover, when free of such testing percent of such events seemed to me impossible to translate into the time-limitations, there didn’t seem to be anything exciting to do.

space medium. It is as if one were to try to describe music, such as a My deliberate inducement of the second state also became tedious be-symphony orchestra with choir, and do it in words without the use of such cause I had found a simpler way to achieve it. I would wake up after two technical descriptions as notation, instruments, intervals, tonalities, and so or possibly three sleep cycles, or approximately after three or four hours, on. One can use such words as “nice,” “compelling,” “frightening,” “awe- and find myself already relaxed physically, rested, and completely

wide inspiring," "warm," "loving," "beautiful"—and be nowhere remotely awake. In that state, I found it ridiculously easy to "unhook" and flow near the actual description.

freely out of the body. This, of course, posed the question of what to do.

You do the best you can. Which, I suppose, is what will happen as the Everyone else was asleep at three or four-thirty in the morning. There attempt is made. I'm sure reporting Niagara Falls barrel-cruising was eas-seemed nothing to be gained by going and meeting people while they ier.

were asleep, not any easy prospect for validation because of the hour. So My here-now activities posed another problem. None of the exercises with no particular goal or attraction, I usually would drift around a bit, and techniques I had been designing and providing for others would work then slip back in, turn on the light, read until I was sleepy again, and that for me. Psychologist friends have offered many reasons why they are inef-was it.

fective in my case. The simplest one is that I just cannot get my left brain This compounded the frustration, as there was still the compulsion. All out of the way. I have been so deeply involved in the production process of the effort to work in the out-of-body state had to have some meaning or that my critical and analytical faculty simply won't let go of the here-now-importance beyond what my conscious mind (or those of others) thought attention-focusing material contained therein. Also, in order to produce to be important.

these exercises in an audio mode, I have had to listen with an intense form In the spring of 1972, a decision was made that provided the answer.

of concentration in the recording and mixing of the various sounds that The limiting factor was my conscious mind. Therefore, if OOBE deci-we use. Evidently, I have had to shut off the effect. Even a simple onesions were left up to that part of me, as they had been, I would remain just frequency tone causes me to analyze the frequency and attempt to deter-as I was. I was too much in control —this left-brain "I." What would mine that it is stable.

happen if I turned this decision-making process over to my total self Perhaps there is an effect I am not aware of. But it is a strange place to (soul?), who was purportedly conversant with such activities.

be, looking over the fence at a garden you have planted and fertilized, Believing this, I then put it into practice. The following night, I went watching everybody else have such a good time.

to sleep, went through two sleep cycles (about three hours), woke up, and The here-now portions of recent events are relatively straightforward.

remembered the decision. I detached from the physical and floated free. I For example, I had become painfully (literally) aware that my body has said in my conscious mind that the decision to do is to be made by my taken to rejecting chemicals. This includes alcohol, prescription drugs, entire self. After waiting for what

seemed only a few seconds, there was a caffeine, and evidently anything else my body says is unnatural for its tremendous surge, a movement, an energy in that familiar spatial black-operation. The rejection or allergic reaction takes the form of profuse ness, and there began for me an entire new era in my out-of-body activi- sweating, vomiting, and/or severe abdominal cramps. This may be conties. Since that night, my nonphysical experiences have been almost to-structive, but it also has its disadvantages. I never was a consequential tally due to this procedure.

drinker, but even a glass of wine begins the rejection process.

The results have been of a nature so far removed from anything my During surgery, it is something intense to cope with. I begin to reject conscious mind could conceive of that a new problem arose. Although my the anesthesia, and awake on the operating table to feel the surgeon sew-

ing me up (I am sure to the surprise of the anesthesiologist). In recovery, it for a week, and there will be perhaps three dollars. I may not go near it under intense pain, a shot of Demerol only brings on extreme vomiting.

for three months, and there may be only six dollars. There seems

to be no You can imagine my frustration when others are using a system we devel-particular format for the generation or the amount of money. I can take oped that permits excellent nondrug pain control in the postsurgical pe-the pants to the cleaners and return them to the closet in their plastic bag.

riod. In my hospital visits during the past ten years, only once has the It makes no difference. We have theorized that I may walk in my sleep system worked for me. I was sorely disappointed when it was not effective and insert money in the pants pocket. The unopened plastic bag dispelled on the last trip. It was a nearly unbearable event. Yet I knew if I con-that idea. One rationale is that it is an ongoing result of a very urgent need sciously went out of body, I would not have the courage to return to that for a few dollars back in my teenage period. (There was a strange event sea of scalding pain.

back in that era that might relate to it.) Some part of my system still A psychologist friend back in the early days was skeptical of this drug remembers that urgent need and attempts to provide for it. Too bad that allergy. Further, he was interested in what the effects of what are now when you reach another stage in life, five or six or eleven dollars does not called entertainment drugs would be on my type of personal and physical go very far! Very few people really believe it, and I don’t blame them. I makeup. We tried “laboratory”-quality mescaline and LSD on my system.

wouldn’t if it didn’t happen to me.

Nothing happened.

Item: In our house at Whistlefield Farm, there was a screened porch off Another item: I asked a nonphysical friend if I had been in a physical the living room. To get to the porch, one had to go through two double life existence in the recent past. It was one of the few clear verbal answers doors and down a series of flagstone steps that led to the porch at a lower that I received:

level. These steps were quite steep, the difference in floor height being

“Your last human life was spent as a monk in a monastery in Coshocton, approximately four feet.

Pennsylvania.”

One morning, with my arms full of books and papers, I walked out the I looked at the map of Pennsylvania and there was no Coshocton indi-entrance to the porch and stumbled. My left foot crossed over in front of cated. I knew there was a Coshocton, Ohio, because I had lived in the my right, and I dove headlong in the direction of the flagstone floor of the state. Therefore I asked again to be sure that the state was right. It was porch. As I fell I was unable to get my arms out in front of me. I remem- Pennsylvania. I didn’t give it much thought because I personally am not ber thinking, “Well, this will certainly end up with a fractured skull and a deeply interested in who I was, if I was. I mentioned the event to a broken neck.”

Catholic monsignor friend, and he offered to look it up in his records.

About six inches from the floor, my fall was suddenly arrested and I Some weeks later he called to say there really was a monastery in a place landed on my head and shoulders very lightly on the flagstone floor, no called Coshocton, Pennsylvania. He thought it would be interesting to heavier than if I had simply put my head down very carefully. The rest of drive up there some weekend and see if I responded to any memories.

my body then draped down afterward, drifting as gently as a feather. I lay Perhaps, someday.

there for a moment wondering what had happened. I felt my head and my Item: The money-pants pocket. For years, I have kept this as a closet shoulders and there was no pain, no mark, no bruise, nothing. I stood up, secret because no one believes it. I have shown it to my wife, Nancy, and picked up my books and papers, looked at the place from where I had she still is skeptical. It seems that if I leave a certain pair of pants hung in fallen, and tried to figure some answer. Something had cushioned my fall, the bedroom closet, it generates paper money. Real money, not new and but I certainly was not consciously aware of what it was.

crisp, usually fairly well worn. It is never a great amount; the maximum I Some months later in the middle of winter, a similar event took place. I have ever found in the pocket is eleven dollars. Usually there will be only was walking down the front steps, which had been reportedly cleaned after two, three, or four dollars. Time does not seem to be a factor. I can ignore a snow, slipped, and started to fall. This time I was not quite so surprised 10

FAR JOURNEYS

OLD LOCAL TRAFFIC

11

when I again landed very lightly. There have been only two such events, from aircraft. I waited eagerly for something more on the radio. My host and I don't think I will deliberately try to fall experimentally. Just another asked curiously what was so important. Needless to say, I didn't feel that I one of those "as yet" unexplained moments.

could tell him. A couple of minutes later the radio came to life loudly and Item: One of the more puzzling events took place as a result of a very clearly: "This is United 351 over Eaglehill at twelve thousand feet."

direct communication—or so it seemed. Early one morning in the mid-The next day, after a long drive home, I went to the FAA facility at our seventies, about three o'clock to be exact, I went through my customary local airport and asked the FAA man where Eaglehill was. He replied lazy man's way of rolling out of my body. Almost immediately I was instantly that it was a holding point in a neighboring state, a radio marker accosted by a vaguely formed individual who gave me this very specific beacon. He showed it to me on the airways sectional map, and sure instruction:

enough, there it was—Eaglehill. There evidently was some type of small

“Mr. Monroe, be at Eaglehill at 7 A.M. on July fourth.” Surprised, I village by that name, although it did not show on any of the road maps we asked for a repeat of the instruction. It came exactly the same: “Mr.

had.

Monroe, be at Eaglehill at 7 A.M. on July fourth.”

This put a whole new prospect on the message. Therefore, on the Before I had a chance to ask why or what it was all about, the form afternoon of July 3,1 left home for the long drive over to Eaglehill. I drove faded and disappeared. I then rolled back into my body and sat up and into the small town nearest to the supposed site, checked into a local wrote it down very carefully.

motel, had a casual dinner, and went to bed early.

The next night when I performed the same act, almost immediately the At exactly seven the next morning, I drove into the crossroads called form was there again with the same message. It was very definite—almost Eaglehill. It consisted of two or three houses, a garage, and a store, all a command—and again the figure faded before I had a chance to query situated around a small country crossroads. Not a very impressive place, to further. I tried the third night to see if it replicated again, but there was say the least. It looked like it had not changed in the last thirty or forty no response. What was so impressive about it was that the instruction was years. I pulled over to the side and stopped the car. Several local citizens very clear. And it was repeated exactly the second

night. Most important, sitting outside the garage looked at me curiously as I sat and waited.

“they” actually called me by name.

I waited for over an hour and nothing happened. No one approached This instruction elicited a great deal of curiosity from me and those of me. I didn’t feel anything except first excitement and then disappoint-my friends and family to whom I related it. We speculated in many ways ment. Finally, sometime after eight o’clock, under curious stares, I started about it but the big question was: “Where is Eaglehill?” It was about the car and drove up through Eaglehill and into the countryside beyond. I April when the instruction was given and there seemed to be plenty of drove about two miles further and there was nothing but farms. I returned time to find out what the message meant. But try as we might, we could to the crossroads and turned west and drove several miles. Again, nothing not find any place called Eaglehill. After a few weeks, I more or less forgot different, no one signaled me, nothing except country and farms. I turned about the idea.

around and drove east. It was all the same. I returned to my post at the An event changed all that. While visiting friends several hundred miles crossroads, sat in the car, and waited. When it got to be twelve o’clock, I from home, we were having dinner out on the patio of their house. My decided that it had all been an illusion, returned to the motel, checked host had a radio receiver that automatically scanned various frequencies out, and had lunch. It was either the wrong Eaglehill, or I understood it such as police, fire, and so on. We were sitting there chatting when sud-wrong,

misinterpreted, or it was all a hoax or a dream.

denly over the radio came someone saying “Eaglehill.” It jarred my atten-After much contemplation, I finally decided where my mistake was.

tion immediately. I excitedly asked my host what the radio was tuned to.

The invitation or request was not that I go to Eaglehill physically: it was He replied that it was the FAA aircraft channel for instructions to and that I be there in an out-of-body state. What the invitation did not take 12

FAR JOURNEYS

OLD LOCAL TRAFFIC

13

into account was how difficult it is for me to go directly to a specific place, I became a regular member of choir practice. I did not attend every rather than a person.

Friday, but I did show up at least two Fridays per month. Again, it was a Adding fuel to the fire: Years later, in encountering a government offi-welcome change from my daily work in cable television and the partici-cial, I asked him about that particular site, without reference to why I was pants were strictly local businessmen who had, for the most part, lived in interested. He

related to me that it was a special federal research installa-the Charlottesville area all of their lives.

tion. It was being constructed just about the time I was there. Evidently it They also were totally unaware of any strange research or other activi-is still not common knowledge, or at least I don't want to take that ties I might be involved in. Even when my first book was published they chance. Therefore, the location as indicated in my retelling is not the knew nothing about it and I made no mention of it. To this day perhaps correct one. I still like to speculate as to what might have happened if I one or two are remotely aware of what I now do.

had kept the appointment in the out-of-body state.

The first indicator that there were unusual factors involved in card-Item: My company had received the franchise to install a cable televi-playing choir practice came about two years later when there were six of us sion system in Charlottesville, Virginia, and we needed a receiving an-playing a game of seven-card stud. The deal began normally. My two hole tenna site on top of a hill just outside of town. The owner of the hill was cards were a three and four of clubs. Among the face-up cards dealt to me Roy, a small, balding, bright-blue-eyed energetic little man with a dry and were a five and seven of clubs. The betting was quite strong; there were subtle sense of humor. His face was wrinkled and tanned from many years pairs all over the table, including a pair of aces showing on Roy's face-up of supervising the work in the twenty-thousand-apple-tree orchard atop cards. After I stayed in the betting, which I had no statistical right to do, the hill. As he was a true Scotsman,

the negotiation was elaborately casual trying to buy an inside straight or a flush, the final, seventh card was dealt but came to a very reasonable and fair end. And we became friends.

After lunch one Friday, he looked at me with a twinkle and asked, "Do to each of us face down. I did not look at mine. Suddenly, without any you like to play cards?"

question, I knew that the card dealt to me was the six of clubs. It was very An old familiar surge rose in me. "What kind of cards?"

strange, simply a "knowing."

"Well," he said, "some people don't call it poker because we play so

"Roy," I said, indicating the untouched down card, "that's a six of clubs many wild games, but you can have a lot of fun at it. It's only ten- and and that will make me a straight flush. And that will beat your aces full."

twenty-cent games, so you can't expect to make any money. We hold it at Roy looked at the card and looked up at me with a sly grin. He had a different fellow's house each Friday night and the only thing is, we don't already looked at his last card and he knew he had aces full. "I got five have any drinking. It's the oldest, continuous poker game in the city of that says you don't have it. That's not the six of clubs."

Charlottesville. Must have been going on steady for seventy years

—and I reached for the pile of chips and said, “There it is, Roy.”

that’s a long time. If you would like to come tonight, I’ll pick you up, He smiled and matched the stack. “All right, show me.” I turned it wherever you are, about seven-thirty. You’ll have a good time at choir over and it was the six of clubs.

practice.”

Roy smiled. “That doesn’t beat my full house.” He turned over his aces I looked at him blankly. “Choir practice?”

full, which beat the other hands on the table. “I have another five that He smiled. “That’s what we call it here in Virginia. Some fellows say-says you don’t have the three and four of clubs in the hole.”

that they are not sure whether it’s legal or not and we’ve heard of other I smiled. “I don’t want to take your money, Roy.”

games being raided for gambling. Course, we aren’t doing anything like

“A straight flush will beat my aces full.” He pushed another stack out.

that.”

“I don’t think you got it. You somehow knew there was a six of clubs there I smiled. “No, of course not. See you at seven-thirty for

choir practice."

and you ought to quit while you're ahead."

14

FAR JOURNEYS

OLD LOCAL TRAFFIC

15

I smiled and said, "I don't want the other five, Roy." And then I turned by the same person in a six-handed card game are about 5,780,000 to one.

over the three and four in the hole, making the straight flush in clubs.

How did it happen? I don't know. How did I know? Very simply, a He just looked at it and said, "Isn't that something!"

sureness. I suspect a lot of high rollers have made a lot of money on such On the very next hand, with Roy doing the dealing, the feeling I had dealings and lost also because the "knowing" was not right.

was still there, very strong, the "knowing." I didn't even look at my hole cards. Of the four cards dealt face up to me there was a five and seven of hearts. I knew. That's all I can tell you, I knew.

“Roy,” I said, “you see that five and seven of hearts?” Roy nodded. He didn’t have the aces this time. “Well,” I said, “this last card you are going to deal is a six of hearts and that will make me a straight flush in hearts.

You see, I haven’t seen my bottom cards yet, you notice?” He nodded, watching. Roy had been the dealer. The rest of the players were watching intently, expecting me to lose. Roy was an exceptional card player.

The last card was dealt to me face down, and before I could pick it up, Roy said, “I got another five says it’s not the six of hearts. No, as a matter of fact, I’ll make it ten.” He shot a pack of chips forward.

“I don’t want to take your money, Roy,” I said, smiling.

“You are not taking it from me and I am not giving it to you,” he said.

“Put it up.”

I did.

“Now turn over the card,” he demanded. I did, and it was the six of hearts. He looked at me with utter astonishment. He was doing the dealing. No trickery was at all possible in his frame of reference.

“Moreover,” I said, “those two hole cards that I haven’t looked at

yet are the three and four of hearts."

Roy looked at me. "I have twenty that says that they aren't."

With utmost casualness I said, "I don't want to take your money, Roy,"

and turned over the two hole cards. They were the three and four of hearts.

Roy looked at the straight flush, the same one as before except in hearts. "Sometimes you are about the luckiest fellow I ever met."

The others at the table agreed.

That particular run of "luck" was talked about for several months. The odds against two successive straight flushes of the same denomination held HEMI-SYNC ET AL.

several psychiatric and social service workers, plus assorted friends and family. Most research and experiments took place at night or on weekends, as all of us were employed in other occupations. In retrospect, the immense contribution that this group gave freely was a major factor in helping the whole process get started under these new conditions, and for With the publication of Journeys Out of the Body, we began to receive this I

will be forever grateful. It took much patience and dedication to surprising inquiries, information, and cooperation from many unexpected paste up with electrodes, then lie hour after hour in a darkened booth and sources. A book intended for the general public was attracting interest in report subjective results of various tests—results that could be correlated scientific and academic circles. Our laboratory west of Charlottesville, with instrument readouts in the control room to the point where a consen-Virginia, opened on an entirely voluntary basis. Originally named sus could be achieved.

Whistlefield Research Laboratories, this was later changed to the Monroe Our first studies were a continuation of the sleep research begun in Institute of Applied Sciences. Using the name Monroe was not an ego New York. The demand for a solution to a problem brought one of our factor, but simply the quickest way to clear the title officially. The “Ap-early results of significance. Because so much of the reported out-of-body plied Sciences” part was quite specific. We felt that the understanding of states, including many of my own, revolved around the sleep state, we still OOBEs could be achieved on a level compatible with our Western sci-believed some answers would be found in this area. However, most of our ences and that the greatest service we could perform would be to apply subjects arrived at night after dinner, and with long, boring periods of any discoveries or information that we encountered.

being wired up with electrodes, they were either too tired to stay awake in The laboratory consisted of a one-story building designed for the pur-the booth or too restless to be able to relax enough to report any subtle pose, and included two offices, a

lounge, and a research wing. In the wing and subjective responses. It defeated our purpose to use any types of were an instrument or control room, three isolation booths, and a briefing medication or drugs to control these states, so we looked for a method room. All three booths were connected independently to the control room within our own frame of reference.

for both physiological monitoring and the delivery of various types of The old truism held. Necessity is the mother. It was through this need audio and electromagnetic signals to stimulate a response from a volunteer to help our subjects stay awake, get into a borderland sleep state, that we subject in a booth.

began to try utilizing sound. This resulted in the discovery of Frequency-The booths themselves each contained a heated water bed, thus provid-Following Response (FFR), which permitted us to hold the subject in a ing a comfortable condition in total darkness. They were also environmen-certain state of consciousness between wakefulness and sleep for extended tally controlled in air, temperature, and acoustics. A subject in the booth periods of time. By introducing certain sound patterns in the subject's ear, could be wired to transmit to the control room a wide array of physiological signals. These included eight-channel EEG (brain-wave electrical pat-we determined that there was a similar electrical response in the brain terns), EMG (muscle tone), pulse rate, and body voltage. As things devel-waves of the subject. By controlling that brain-wave frequency, we were oped, we were able to determine most of what we wanted to know simply able to help the subject relax, keep him awake, or put him to sleep. One of by reading body-voltage changes.

our engineering participants suggested that we patent this unusual pro-Aside from visiting participants from out of town, we had a local volun-cess, and we received a patent on the method and technique in 1975.

teer group consisting of several M.D.s, a physicist, an electronic engineer, By cross-referencing the various effective frequencies among subjects, we slowly began to evolve combinations of sound frequencies that created FFRs highly conducive to OOBEs and other unusual stages of conscious-

ness. Among these, of course, was a very effective means of moving into much longer. To see how far this would go, we sent a tape of the compos-what is commonly known as a meditative state.

ite signal to a psychiatrist friend in Kansas. In an experiment, he tested it All of this did not come quickly. Only a few words cover hundreds of on four completely naive subjects and with no suggestion as to what to hours of putting together different sound patterns and testing for re-expect. He reported that one of the four subjects quit the test because he sponses, with subjects patiently lying in a booth as sound warbled in their found that he was

bouncing against the ceiling of the room looking down ears, slowly changing in pitch, while the technician in the control room at his physical body.

looked for changes in the monitoring instruments.

Our next step came as an interesting proposition. With the body asleep During such sessions, our volunteer subject participants learned to re-

—i.e., the physical senses turned off or reduced—why not develop fre-port verbally on any changes in their mental or physical condition. This quencies that would enhance perceiving by means other than the five became a very important ability, to speak and perceive when the normal physical senses? With the insertion of higher-frequency beta signals, our pattern would be to lose consciousness or be “asleep.”

subjects began to find much more than the usual blackness. First came One of the first solid points of identification was a state that we began light and color patterns seen visually in the blacked-out booth, with eyes to label Focus 10. There was no particular significance to the number 10, either closed or open. Next came sounds heard in the head, not a part of and I am not sure where it originated. Also, we wanted to be sure it was the synthesized sounds, but voices, music, sometimes loud explosions that not confused with other forms of consciousness. Therefore it became sim-startled the subject completely out of Focus 10—something that has still ply TEN. We were able to identify this state very specifically and to return to be explained.

to it again and again with our subjects. Easily defined, Focus 10 is a state These phenomena were gradually perceived in a pattern, as somewhat where the mind is awake and the body asleep. All the physiological reof a band preceding a change into the out-of-body experience. There were sponses are those of one in light or deep sleep. However, the brain-wave also preliminary physiological responses—lowering of blood pressure and patterns are different. The EEGs show a mix of waves ordinarily associ-pulse, slight temperature drop (03deg), loss of muscle tone. Subjectively, ated with sleep, light and deep, and overlying beta signals (wakefulness).

there were reports of a heaviness in the physical body, sometimes cata-Gradually there developed a very special group, a total of some eight lepsy, and a strong sense of heat followed by coolness. As the induction of subjects completely familiar with the Focus 10 state. Verbal communica-the OOBE state was examined further, one key element did repeat consistion in Focus 10 through the microphone/headphone system became as tently. Subjects began to locate within their nonphysical perception a normal as if we were sitting across from one another in a conference room.

pinpoint of light. When the subject learned to “move” in the direction of We could tell easily from the instrument readout when they were and the light until it became larger and larger, and then move through it, the when they were not in Focus 10. It could not be imagined or faked, even OOBE state was achieved. In slow motion, it “felt as if one were going if there had been any remote desire to do so. There were many times, of through a tunnel to get to the light,” a classic description that has been course, when they

were unable to get into the Focus 10 state because of brought forth by many who performed the OOBE inadvertently or in a external pressures and stresses in their daily lives that they could not near-death situation.

abandon easily. In such cases, they simply reported that they could not One new development was the key that opened many things for us. We

"do it" that night or canceled the appointment. This saved much time now call it the Hemi-Sync process.

and effort.

Science has long known that your brain is divided into two halves, or With the constant stream of visitors we began to determine that others, hemispheres. But only in recent years has it been discovered that these totally untrained, could be assisted into Focus 10 without a great deal of two halves are entirely different in the functions they perform. There is trouble. The process of learning to communicate verbally would take still controversy about the theory as to details. Most of the time, we think 20

only with our "left brain." When we use our "right brain," it is

primarily We do. Recent studies show we use our right brain throughout our daily to support the action of the left. Otherwise, we do our best to ignore it. In lives in many subtle ways. For example, the left brain remembers the function, the nerve signals from these brain halves act in an X crossover.

name, but the right brain remembers the face. (How many times have you The left brain controls the right side of the body, and the right brain spotted a familiar face but couldn't remember his name? Left brain, watch controls the left. We are primarily a right-handed civilization, dominated out! Studies of world leaders throughout history indicate they thought by our left brains. Only in the last fifty years have left-handers been with far more than their analytical, intellectual minds. All great decisions accepted as "equals." In many ways, we still discriminate against left-by mankind have been made with the left brain plus. Plus the right brain?

handers. Did you know that a pair of scissors is a right-handed tool?

Evidence supports it, based upon what we now know. Moreover, it's a We use the left brain to talk and read, to do mathematics, to reason good guess that the right brain pulls the voting-booth lever in presidential deductively, to remember detail, to measure time, among many other elections. Current theory centers around the idea that we shift brain-facets—the source of logical, rational thought. It "knows" nothing else.

hemisphere dominance many times during our daily activities.

Such a shift Our right brain is the originator of ideas, spatial sense, intuition, music, takes place instantly, depending on the mental or physical need at the emotion, and probably much more than we now realize. It is timeless, moment. This seems to limit even more rigidly the already minor use of apparently with a language all its own.

our brain/mind potential. How we got smart enough long enough to One of the best descriptions given to illustrate the difference is with a climb down out of the trees and survive as a species was either dumb luck reel of movie film. To determine the content, the left brain will put it on a or a miracle. Or something else.

projector, show the movie on a screen, and thus be informed. The right How do we then go about using more of our brain power? There have brain will pick up the roll of film, hold it for a moment, then put it down been many ways attempted over the course of human evolution. Virtually and say, "Oh, I understand."

all of them have had drawbacks or limitations in one form or another. The Ridiculous! That's your left brain's reaction as you use it to read these Hemi-Sync process offers promise and potential in this area. It can be words. It simply doesn't compute—by left-brain standards.

utilized with relative ease, does not require years of intensive training, and Basically, we are a half-brained society. Virtually everything we consider is not limited to a narrow band of application.

valuable is operated or controlled by our dominant left brain. Even if it Hemi-Sync (short for hemispheric synchronization) uses patterns of originates in the right brain, such as an idea or music, the left brain takes sound to help create simultaneously an identical wave form in both brain over and puts it to use.

hemispheres. This means that when your ear hears a certain type of sound How did we get this way? No one is absolutely sure, but one of the signal, the brain tends to respond or “resonate” with similar electrical better guesses is that the left-brain dominance came about because of a signals. Knowing that various electrical brain waves are indicators of states basic need to survive in a physical world. Through thousands of years, our of consciousness (such as awake or asleep), you thus can listen to a similar forebears added to left-brainism because that was the way to get things sound pattern and it will help you be in the desired state of awareness.

done. Our entire system—books, schools, colleges and universities, indus-Hemi-Sync takes the process an important step further. Each ear sends try, political structures, churches—is fundamentally left-brained in learn-its dominant nerve signal to the opposite brain hemisphere, following the ing, application, and operation. We have generally regarded right-brain X pattern. When separate sound pulses are sent to each ear (using head-thinking with amused tolerance, suspicion, disgust, irritation, distrust—phones to isolate one ear from the other), the halves of the brain must act and awe.

in unison to “hear” a third signal, which is the difference between the two Then why bother! Why not stay half-brained and let it go

at that. Who signals in each ear. For example, if you hear a sound measuring 100 in one needs the right brain!

ear and another signal of 125 in the other, the signal your whole brain will 22

FAR JOURNEYS

HEMI-SYNC ET AL.

23

“generate” will be 25. It is never an actual sound, but it is an electrical trist began working with him daily, utilizing the Hemi-Sync process. By signal that only can be created by both brain hemispheres acting and the Wednesday of the second week, a simple but very significant event working together. The signal so generated is narrow-band in frequency took place. The patient was able to go to sleep at night for the first time in and often twice the amplitude or strength of a typical EEG brain-wave two years without any pain or sleep medication.

form.

At the end of two weeks, the patient returned home. He died several If the 25 signal (above) is one that produces a certain type of conscious-months later, and the final report came from his wife. The psychologist ness, then the whole brain—both hemispheres—is focused in an identical patient had spent a very calm and quiet last week of his life, completely state of awareness at the same

time. Most important, the condition can be free of pain, without any medication, and had a pleasant and peaceful last changed at will by changing the sound pattern. It also can be learned and few days with his family. Our psychiatrist who treated him believes that re-created from memory when the need arrives.

his exposure to Hemi-Sync during treatment made this possible.

Once the researcher or clinician is exposed to some of the potentials of Another psychiatrist friend, active in research with schizophrenics, the Hemi-Sync process, his first thought is application within areas of his found that under certain Hemi-Sync patterns one patient lost many of the own interest. One illustration of this is in the field of psychiatry. The use symptoms of his illness. When taken off the Hemi-Sync sound, he reof Hemi-Sync in analysis apparently opens the patient to levels of memory verted back to his typical psychotic condition. This was only one particular that may take years to achieve using standard interview methods. Another patient. However, it does beg for further investigation, to determine if the experimental use has been in reduction of stress tension in patients. Some-patient can be trained to replicate the conditions created by Hemi-Sync, times the change is so subtle that the patient himself is unaware of it. One plus some form of encoding or entrainment that would let him remember of our psychiatric associates was treating an Air Force colonel for stress-and use it in his daily life.

related problems. After two weeks working with Hemi-Sync and the psy-Certainly one of the most successful applications of Hemi-Sync is a chiatrist, he angrily wanted to give up.

training series we call Emergency Treatment. This is designed to help an

“It isn’t doing a damn thing for me,” he reported. “Everything’s the individual through the process of serious illness, accident injury, or sur-same. I don’t feel any different, not a thing.” He hesitated. “Well, I did gery. One of the earliest examples comes to mind.

take my wife out for dinner the other night for the first time in six A psychiatric counselor visited our lab, having heard of some of our months. And, oh yes, I finally took my son out fishing for the weekend, work, and in the course of conversation we discovered that he was at that which I had promised to do for a long time. But that’s all. Nothing else.

time the second-oldest living kidney transplant recipient. He had under-Not a single thing!”

gone some fifteen successive operations over the years to correct the ef-Our psychiatrist friend simply nodded.

fects of the chemicals that he had to take in order to avoid rejection of the There has been much talk about the use of Hemi-Sync with terminal transplanted kidney. He was due to go in for surgery for the sixteenth time cases. However, in spite of the broad interest and numerous requests, very on the following Thursday. We suggested that he try this Emergency few have actually utilized the system with specific patients. One example Treatment series. He readily agreed.

of this took place with another psychiatric associate, who was treating His case was important in that, because of the many previous opera-what might be labeled the hard-core terminal case. His patient was a tions, his doctor had a very precise history of his physiological state during psychologist who had been ill for two years and had become drug-addicted surgery, how much anesthesia he required, what was needed to control his in order to handle the pain of his illness. Thus the problems doubled up—pain, and his rate of recuperation, among other items. Knowing this, his the patient was supposed to know all the answers and would automatically doctor agreed to let him use the tape series, which involved preliminary resist all normal treatment, with the added drug dependency. Our psychia-exercises and then listening to a Hemi-Sync tape in the operating room 24

during the actual operation, during recovery, and again while recuper-pain or sleep medication. He evidently became so annoyed at hospital ating.

procedures that he discharged himself three days after surgery. A young On the scheduled Thursday, he went into surgery at eleven o’clock.

woman had major abdominal surgery and was sky-diving one

week later.

According to the report, the surgeon very nearly canceled the operation The Emergency Treatment series has had a remarkable history. The big-because of his low blood pressure. However, it was steady, so he decided gest problem is gaining the consent of the surgeon and the hospital per-that this was not a serious risk. At four o'clock in the afternoon, the sonnel to its use in their highly organized environment.

patient called me from his hospital room. He was sitting up in bed.

For a good night's sleep, Hemi-Sync appears as effective as prescription

"I just thought I'd let you know how it went." His voice sounded drugs. Executives on long airline flights use it to overcome jet lag. Others strong. "They gave me one shot of pain medication before I had a chance find it helpful in stress-tension reduction or in playing a better game of to stop them, but I have not needed any since. The only problem that I golf.

had was that I tried to get up and go to the bathroom and I fainted. The As a learning tool, it has a great ability to focus and hold attention. In a doctor reported that my blood pressure still was very low. Is that normal?"

particular course in a government training school, it increased mental-

“Try counting yourself out from ten to one,” I replied, “and then see motor skills by 75 percent. In another test, Morse code students improved where your blood pressure is. It would seem that the recovery tape didn’t their ability by as much as 30 percent. On the other end of the scale, get you out of it completely. Call me back after your doctor takes your primary-grade pupils in Tacoma learned in four weeks what ordinarily took blood pressure again.”

a full semester.

He did as suggested, and reported that his blood pressure had com- These and other results led us to the beginnings of definitions of what pletely returned to normal. According to the records, his recuperation we were doing and why we were doing it. It appeared to be something time was cut in half from what it had been after all of his previous much different from finding ways to trigger OOBE states. This brought us operations. More important, he was able to control totally his problem of to the following formal premise:

chronic pain, which had plagued him in the months and years previously.

Stated simply, the Institute holds to the concept that (1) consciousness Once out of the hospital, he began to develop actively the use of Hemi-and the focusing thereof contain any and all solutions to the life processes Sync for pain control. He met with the State Rehabilitation Agency, as that man desires or encounters; (2) greater understanding and apprecia-one of their major problems in rehabilitation is the control of pain which tion of such consciousness can be achieved only through

interdisciplinary prevents many from living and working normally. The State Rehab people approaches and coordination; (3) the results of related research effort are became interested enough so that we were invited to conduct a demon-meaningful only if reduced to practical application, to “something of stration at the Federal Rehabilitation Facility at Hot Springs, Arkansas. As value” within the context of the contemporary culture or era.

a result, we received a request for the cost to train personnel in our process This led us to the base that consciousness is a form of energy at work.

at rehab centers in all fifty states. We provided this, but never received The first step must therefore be to perceive the energy itself—no small any further requests. Evidently it was too unorthodox to fit into a federal trick when you are using yourself to measure yourself, as it were. Once it is budget.

perceived in its raw form, one can possibly begin to understand how it is The use of Emergency Treatment during surgery has had varying de-naturally used. Such perception will permit a broader and more deliberate grees of success and no failures whenever it has been properly used. One control of such energy fields. From control, it is a very logical step to apply vascular surgeon has utilized it with over thirty patients and still has diffi-it in new and expanded forms. This is all a very circumlocutory way to say culty in enlisting his fellow practitioners in its use. The president of a that if you can find out the stuff that makes you think and be, you can use major corporation used it during surgery, and refused any postoperative it in ways that you are not using it now.

protection from any influence or any source that might provide me with Program

less than my stated desires.

The results of this first workshop were not spectacular, as far as we could determine, but we did learn much from it. It certainly provided a much broader base for our experimental testing. Basically we had introduced Focus 10 and various simple applications of the potentials of this In the mid-seventies, a development took place that changed drastically particular state of consciousness. Our debriefing indicated that we had much of our activities. Only in retrospect did it become discernible.

achieved this goal. The participants learned what Focus 10 was—mind Esalen at Big Sur in California invited us to conduct a weekend work-awake, body asleep—and learned how to produce it within themselves at shop using our new methods and techniques. In a way, we took it to be will. We returned to Virginia well satisfied that the method was a practical somewhat of a recognition of what we were doing. Esalen was then known one.

as a beginning source for many new types of psychological theory and Not long thereafter, we began to get requests from individuals

and other organizations to conduct more such sessions. After reviewing our practice, and somewhat a fountainhead of intellectual approaches to the results, we decided that this would be a very productive way to conduct human mind.

experiments on such a broad scale that we could certainly not afford to do We accepted, and made the trip, not quite sure what to expect when we otherwise. Thus we began to conduct weekend sessions on an occasional got there. We had never handled twenty-four people at one time in the basis. We grandly called it the M-5000 Program, on the premise that we consciousness states familiar to us. I am sure the participants really didn't would have a magnificent statistical base and a highly sophisticated and know what to expect either, except that it had to do with the out-of-body well-tuned training system if we ran five thousand participants through it.

experience. We had planned a round-the-clock program, with food avail-The information and experience gleaned from one program would be used able at all times, and breaking up occasionally for two cycles of sleep. I and to modify each succeeding program in order to maximize the results.

an engineer associate, Bill Yost, were the only ones there to conduct this This involved also obtaining trainers to conduct these sessions, no easy marathon.

task, and converting the system into headphones so that the Hemi-Sync Because we were dealing with unknown subjects, we brought with us an effect could be fully utilized. After the first few

sessions, we realized that it affirmation for all of the participants to memorize before they started the was folly to presume that we would ever reach the five-thousand mark. We session.

also began to recognize that we were creating for the participant a doorway, a window, a gap through which he could achieve other states of

/ am more than my physical body. Because I am more than physical consciousness. Thus it became known as the Gateway Program.

matter, I can perceive that which is greater than the physical world.

We did little or no promotion for the training series. Those who at-

Therefore, I deeply desire to expand, to experience: to know, to under-

tended had heard about it by word of mouth from graduates. Because it stand, to control, to use such greater energies and energy systems as may was experimental, each participant signed a statement to that effect and was obliged to report results beyond the session itself. This is not to say be beneficial and constructive to me and to those who follow me.

that all did so, but enough did to give us significant statistics. Earlier Also, I deeply desire the help and cooperation, the assistance, the programs were held over weekends at motels, conference centers, and understanding of those individuals whose

wisdom, development, and ex-

special meeting facilities throughout the United States. Participants met perience are equal to or greater than my own. I ask their guidance and 28

FAR JOURNEYS

THE GATEWAY PROGRAM

29

in a large room where a distribution system we devised provided the taped film, two photographs were taken just prior to the signal for the light training exercises via headphones. In retrospect, it was astounding that the energy to be generated. During the exercise when the energy was sup-program was effective at all, because often the meeting place directly posed to be in place, two other pictures were taken. After the signal was adjoined the motel lounge and bar with a live orchestra playing at night-turned off by the tape, subsequent pictures were also taken.

time. To get around this problem locally, we wired a small motel some five There were some five or six observers present. None of us saw any light miles from our laboratory where we had two-way communication to each phenomena. However, when we went in afterwards and conducted the room. The major problem there was that the motel had no restaurant, and debriefing we examined the Polaroid photographs taken. The ones preced-all food had to be catered during the session. It was at this site that we ing the light

signal were blank; the two after the exercise were blank. The tried an interesting experiment.

two taken during the exercise itself showed a round ball with a marbleized We developed an exercise whereby the participants simultaneously effect much like the earth seen from a distance. Why the Polaroid picked would be able to move this special mental energy into a visible pattern of up a picture and we could not has been explained by several physicists and light some one thousand feet above the motel. In the latter stages of the photographers. The film can “see” light frequencies our eyes cannot. The session, late one night, we put them through the test. The idea was that usual explanations of light leaks, film fogging, etc., have also been put the combined energy of some twenty-four individuals might provide some-forward as the source of the round-ball-of-energy photograph. The blank thing we could see. All external lights in the motel were turned out (the film before and after made the two energy photographs more significant, motel itself was out in the country) and by stopwatch timing we knew the being in the center of the film pack—a most unlikely place to be pre-exact moment when any light should appear above the motel.

exposed.

Four of us went outside and looked up into the darkness. We had had What does the Gateway Program really do for an individual? It varies so plenty of chance to accustom our eyes to the darkness beforehand, so much that each seems to find his own answer. Many, of course, have come when the signal came at the proper time, we looked very eagerly. None of on the possibility that they

will have an out-of-body experience. Most of us saw anything.

the time this expectation is not fulfilled during the session itself. Instead, Suddenly our electronics engineer yelled excitedly, “Look higher, look they gain profound insights and understanding of the purposes behind higher!”

their being and doing. Not at all unusual are life-changing peak experi-We did. Most of us had been looking just above the roof of the motel.

ences or moments of revelation never before encountered and which We now looked far up into the sky in astonishment. Against the starlit neither cannot nor need be repeated.

night there were soft, red, neonlike waves. They resembled nothing so The program itself teaches the Focus 10 state (mind awake, body much as trickling water moving across an arc of the sky directly atop the asleep). Participants also learn to move into what is called Focus 12, where roof of the motel. At exactly the time that the exercise called for the light all physical-data input is shut off and the consciousness can reach out and to shut off, it suddenly disappeared. Three minutes later the exercise was begin to perceive in ways other than through the five senses. The action repeated on the tape, and the red waving rivulets appeared again and shut really begins here, where perspectives and overviews change drastically. It off at the appropriate signal. All four of us observed it and were tremen-is here where the participant truly understands that he is “more than his dously excited by the result.

physical body."

Later at a Gateway session in California, at a ranch north of San Fran-The Gateway Program thus has evolved into a unique process of self-cisco, we repeated the exercise. This time we had an engineer with a exploration and discovery. It first surmounts the Fear Barrier (of the unspecial Polaroid camera pointed upward to attempt to take a picture if the known, of change), which seems to be the greatest cultural restraint on phenomenon was repeated. To ensure against the possibility of fogged individual growth. Think of where you are now as a clearing in a dark 30

forest—we call it C-l consciousness. We then take you into the forest to a Through the Gateway Program, we have been able to conduct tests point where you can still "see" the familiar clearing. That point is a with the Hemi-Sync process with over 3,000 subjects over the past ten guidepost (Focus 10). After a sufficient number of runs between guidepost years. With a minimum of twenty individual test/exercises per subject and clearing, the fear disappears. At the Focus 10 guidepost, you always participant, that comes out to 60,000-plus individual tests of the effective-know you can get back to the clearing if you get uncomfortable for any ness of the method and techniques involved. That has been and is the reason.

basic value to us of the Gateway Program—a test base of 60,000. At the From the Focus 10 guidepost, another point is established deeper into very least, we know that we have been able to put people to sleep 60,000

the forest and probably “out of sight” of the clearing. This we call Focus times and awaken them. That is a pretty good statistic for product testing, 12. After several runs between guideposts 10 and 12, this too becomes especially one that is noninvasive in its physiological impact.

familiar and secondary fears fade away. You know that even if you can’t Most significant is the analysis of the Gateway population—those who perceive the clearing (C-l) from Focus 12, you can “see” Focus 10—and have attended the sessions over the past eight years. First, 41 percent are from 10, you know the way back to C-l. The process is expanded to male. This is double the norm for the typical self-awareness workshop.

succeeding guideposts, each deeper and different, beyond ever-expanding Most researchers agree this is due to the scientific aspect of the Hemi-limits.

Sync process as against more esoteric origins. Second, 29 percent are what With the Fear Barrier dissolved, one of the greatest gifts to the human we label professionals—psychologists, psychiatrists, educators, scientists, species comes into full play. Curiosity. With the tools provided, the par-engineers, etc. These attend principally to determine possible applications ticipant is then free to do as he wishes. He accepts the authority to do so in their own areas of

interest. Third, the average age is thirty-nine, which

—and the responsibility.

puts Gateway completely out of the age range of the faddist and "in"

The individual, of his own accord, without suggestion but through di-transient group. Finally, 83 percent attend for one basic reason and come rect experience, begins to know, rather than believe, that he does survive away with another, more valuable result.

physical death. It doesn't make any difference what he does during his The best way that we can report the meaning of Gateway is to give you physical life, what he believes; he will go on after his physical body dies.

some of the reports that we have received relative to the program from Survival beyond physical death is not a belief system, therefore, but a those who have attended. Here are a few of these: simple fact as natural as being born. There is no dogma related to the Gateway Program—except that when you begin the session, you should seriously consider that you are "more than your physical body."

1,135-CM

It is inevitable that the borders between this and other reality-energy

“The most thrilling experience for me was with Focus 15 on increased systems are crossed. Many of the results are reported as reunions with vibrations: I felt the energy flow going slowly up on one side and down

“dead” friends and family as well as encounters with other forms of intelli-

on the other side of my body, then faster and faster. I felt I would become gent energy not generally recognized or accepted by mainstream Ameri-

a spiral, then a point, and so I did, and as a compact unit I was flying can cultural levels.

higher and higher… . But then I thought: I cannot go any further, any Again, if you are aware of the basic effect of the Hemi-Sync process/

higher— and in a flash I ‘hear’: Hey, you limit yourself! Okay, then, I that of providing an access to many levels of consciousness simultaneously, overcame, accepted, and off I was, I felt projected like a Sputnik into the something far different from the usual consciousness that we use for the universe, to the stars, another entity integrated in the all. Feeling this most part in our daily lives, you can begin to grasp some of the potential oneness was an indescribable joy and happiness!

results.

“The deep lesson I took from this exercise was that although having
32

FAR JOURNEYS

THE GATEWAY PROGRAM

33

heard and read many times that we are what we think, that we limit

/. / don’t believe that it was a dream. As I type this, two weeks after the ourselves by our mind, there I was experiencing something unique, at event took place, I’m still overcome with a feeling of profoundness.

least for me, by overcoming doubts or limitations which I am solely 2. I don’t believe in coincidence. Although the implications are not clear responsible for.”

to me, I feel that there is a reason I experienced something I had never consciously thought about before.

3. Fact: There are people in various institutions who are catatonic or 1644-CM

comatose and whom medical science has not been able to reanimate.”

“… That morning, having lost interest in holding the solar system

in my hands (can't believe I just said that!) as the tape had directed me to 4659-CM

do, I visualized the Focus 15* blue 'door.' Finding nothing there, I proceeded through red, yellow, pink, green, purple, and finally into white.

"lam now considering what to me is the strong possibility that almost Using white as 'Level 21,' I continued to '26,' where I then (and have anything that can be formed into five physical senses, language, oriented since) received messages for other people in the program. I later moved to thought is an illusion. Extraphysical feeling is as close as I can come to

'27,' where I had previously found my father. Feeling that he was busy, I describing what is ultimate reality for me now.

decided to try uncharted (to me) territory.

"When I seek to perceive ultimate reality for me, (what I think you are

"Devising a digital counter, I sailed backward through darkness as the referring to when you use the word 'home'), I experience blankness and counter flashed numbers faster than I could read them. Somewhere near bliss. Blankness, not because it is blank, but because I attempt to experi-where I perceived to be 100 (98?), I stopped and saw many people milling ence it with mental processes that are geared to the five physical senses around: They looked like holograms, but conveyed the message of being and

that are in the habit of perceiving illusion. I am trying to use my

‘alive.’ Some ignored me, some moved away, but several approached me biological illusion computer to perceive beyond the apparent limits of with great joy. I sensed that the latter felt that they were stranded and illusion. Like trying to smell a flower with your ear. I experience bliss thought that I was there to guide them back. I asked about the others and because emotional feeling is the only perceptual tool that I am able to was told that some were just exploring, and would return to their bodies use to sense beyond the illusion. If there are other perceptual tools that when they felt like doing so, while others were waiting for their bodies to are available to me, they are either atrophied by lack of use, and must die, so they could be free. The ones speaking to me, though, said that somehow be reactivated, or they must be initially activated.

they got there inadvertently, and were not able to return on their own.

“At this point, Bob, I heard your barely audible voice saying, ‘You will 2312-CF

now return to Focus 10.’ In panic, I felt I needed your voice to find my

” … During one ‘Rebal’ breathing exercise I experienced what was way back. I tried to piggyback someone, but was not able to, and returned the beginning of some rather puzzling happenings. For reasons unknown to my CHEC Unit** in what I felt was the nick of time. With a to me I was suddenly in a black box— a void of

total blackness. It was great sigh of relief, and an expletive or two, I reexamined the like being juggled from one extreme to the other — from total sensation to experience, and am doing so again at the moment of this writing: lack of sensation. Frustration began to invade me, for I found it was

* “No time” consciousness.

somewhat difficult finding a way out of this vast blackness. In my next

** Controlled Holistic Environmental Chamber.

tape I began to experience the blackness again, and that’s when I started 34 FAR

to worry. At our next meal I mentioned what was occurring to our trainer, that he had felt a surge of love upon hearing it but wasn’t sure where it hoping she might offer a solution.

came from.)

“During our discussion, my problem was overheard by a few males at

“Then quite unexpectedly I was suddenly drawn by a powerful force to the table who had apparently been listening in. Later one of the men one room in particular—to one CHEC Unit in particular. It took me by took me aside to explain. He told me that a few of the men in our group total surprise, for the man in that unit was someone I didn’t know very had found themselves fantasizing about me during their own tape experi-well. In fact, he was the only one at the workshop I had never really had a ences—hence all the sexual thought vibrations I was picking up. He also chance to talk to. He was a young, good-looking psychologist, yet for told me that, having a hard time dealing with their sexual attraction, they some reason we seemed to be purposely avoiding each other.

were putting me in their ‘energy conversion box’ (a place to leave prob-

“All at once I had an all-knowing, as I seemed to float over him, that lems behind) before embarking into their other states of consciousness.

his vibrations were my vibrations. I had an overwhelming desire to meld, They had all helped put me in my black void so as not to distract them!

to feel a part of him— to become one. It was truly one of the sharpest and At first I was annoyed at this. How dare they influence my experiences!

clearest of experiences.

How dare their sexual energy have that much control over me! I still

“I gave to him both my body and soul until there was this tremendous marvel at how powerful thoughts are, and three men’s directed at me was energy surge that rocked and exploded in us. It was an experience that is overwhelming. At the same time I felt somewhat naive for not having beyond words, for love, total and absolute, surrounded us more strongly picked up the signs earlier, but I was much too wrapped up in how the than can’ be earthly experienced or imagined. The more I gave, the workshop was changing me to fully get into what others were thinking.

greater I received and I didn’t want to let go. I wanted to give him even

“But this was not the end… . I transformed my annoyance at being more. It was like two energies in perfect unison becoming one at last. (I used as a ‘sex object,’ even if only consciously projected, and started can remember thinking how physical sex paled in comparison.) wondering what growth could be gained from this experience. It started

“Memories of past lives together came rushing in like flashes of light.

me thinking along other lines and what was to follow would change the We talked in this state and I came to realize this experience could only course of my life.

have happened at the end of the workshop as it did, for each of us would

“And it happened simply because I asked the divine forces in all have been distracted had we ‘met’ earlier on— perhaps hampering other sincerity for me to be able to experience spiritual love. I asked not for me growth experiences that week. There was a meeting of both our minds to be the recipient of it but that I might learn how to give to others to my with this experience and I knew our meeting had been more than coinci-fullest ability. My request was granted:

dence— it was predestined.

“As I went into the next tape I kept that thought in mind—/ wanted

“I truly experienced everything I asked for and more, and when I came to feel what it would be like to feel a part of the love in the universe, to in down to the meeting room after the tape there was an unusual height-a sense actually be making love to a part of me, a part of everyone. I left ened energy where people seemed to be flying. I saw ‘him’ as I came my own CHEC Unit at that point (nonphysically; OOBE) and felt an down the stairs to join the group and he looked at me excitedly, ecstati-urge to visit my other Gateway participants. Straying into one room, I cally, as if something totally incredible had happened to him. I hadn’t called softly to one of the people. He seemed taken aback to see me and I said a word yet, as he quietly repeated a number of times, ‘Thank you.

told him not to be alarmed, that I was only there to send him love and Thank you.' I felt elated— I had made contact. We compared our individ-then left after blowing him a quick goodbye kiss. (Later this person ual experiences, making sure each of us was not coloring the other's recalled that he heard a soft voice in his ear calling his name. He said story. It didn't matter— our stories fit like puzzle pieces, matching per-

fectly and interlocking. We both had also had the use of all our senses—4. Explorer Team the strongest being touch.

"After this experience we were later reunited to share others together.

We've been with each other for the past two years now— growing and loving together.

"So much did I learn at my Gateway experience—but I was truly lucky Amid the diversion of Gateway sessions, visitors ranging from psycholo-

to get it all. I not only got the icing— I got the whole cake!"

gists and electronics engineers to ex-flower children with backpacks, mail response to the original Journeys, we continued our research program with Today the Gateway Program is held for

a full seven-day period at our our volunteer group in the laboratory. The group became consistently Center facility in Virginia. The Center is designed specifically to handle more proficient in achieving other forms of consciousness, including the the Gateway Program. No longer does one have to lie on the floor for out-of-body state. However, personal events in their lives (such as moving taped exercises. Instead the Center now provides what are called CHEC

to another city) brought the regular weekly group down to six. These were Units (Controlled Holistic Environmental Chambers), which provide iso-the physicist, electronics engineer, social services executive, transpersonal lation much as we had in our original laboratory booths. Not only are the psychologist, office manager, and psychiatric counselor. I would have liked taped exercises conducted by headphones in the CHEC Unit, but the to use actual names, but several felt their employers would take a dim view participant actually sleeps in these during the night. Because it is much of it all. Therefore, no names at all.

like a Pullman berth on the old railroad trains, some people initially feel One of the most peculiar aspects was that their experiences paralleled they cannot sleep in there the first night, because of a sense of claustro-my own only in the preliminary stages. They could and did replicate my phobia perhaps. With the environmental treatment in the CHEC Unit—own near out-of-body experiences but from that point on there seemed fresh air and temperature control plus sleep sounds that are available—the little similarity. Possibly because of the confidence factor of a monitor main problem after the second night is to wake them up, the

isolated sleep with whom to communicate, in some respects they had freedoms that I has been so productive and restful. It helps achieve such a complete sleep had never experienced.

that a number of participants have built CHEC Units in their own So that the picture is clear: The subject lies on a water bed in a dark-homes.

ened, acoustically and electrically shielded 8-by-10 room (usually booth 2, Because the Gateway Program is so difficult to produce and conduct everyone's favorite for some unknown reason). The booth has its own air-properly, each year we question the value of continuing it. All things conditioning and heating controls. Electrodes for monitoring physiological considered, it is certainly not a financial success, although supposedly we states are glued to head, fingers, and body. A sound microphone hangs are the only research facility that charges for the privilege of being a about four inches above the face. Audio headphones completely cover volunteer. Each time we consider closing it down, we receive just coinci-each ear. Most important, the subject has just gone to the bathroom to be dentally another report from a graduate who states how meaningful and sure the bladder is empty. Too many sessions had been aborted because how constructive have been the results of his attendance.

the subject reported a "problem" in the physical body, only to find upon a So we schedule another year of Gateways.

hurried return that it was nothing more than a distended bladder. Evidently the total physical relaxation encourages this body

process.

In the control room twenty feet down the hall, a human monitor (I or 38

FAR JOURNEYS

EXPLORER TEAM I

39

one of several others) communicates vocally through a sound system with matter—no vegetation, no sign of life, nothing to truly attract our human the person in the booth. The monitor also feeds Hemi-Sync sound into attention. We did find that in such a state as the OOBE, a different kind the subject's headphones, either to test responses to new frequencies or to of consciousness seemed to exist. The overview of the subject was differ-aid the subject in achieving desired states of consciousness. Finally, the ent. For example, what to us in the control room was a minute could monitor observes and notes changes in instrument readouts on the sub-become hours or timeless to the volunteer in the booth. It was at this ject's physiological condition. Often an assistant is present to help in the point that we began to call them our Explorer team.

processing.

Like most humans, we were possessed with the idea or hope that there Here is a typical "entry" report, the beginning of an OOBE, tran-had to be intelligent life somewhere among the billions of

stars that we scribed from an early file recording during an experiment: could perceive physically. So in our play we took to sending our Explorers out beyond the solar system at what appeared a near-instantaneous change SS/ROMC (OFFICE MANAGER) 7 MINUTES IN–-TEST #188

of locale. The instruction was to keep going until he or she perceived something worthwhile. They passed by the other suns, found other plan-

“I am going rapidly now through a tunnel— I was standing straight up ets, but no intelligent life. It seemed to us a sterile universe.

and now I am just sort of sucked up through this tunnel. It is very narrow The change came in 1974. It took place in all of our Explorers within and I am rapidly shooting through this tunnel. Now I can see a point of several weeks. Some had never met one another, so there was no cross-

light at the other end. I am traveling rapidly to this point of light. It is communication. In looking back to examine the reason for this massive like I am on some type of light beam that is helping to propel me. I am change, the only thing that we could find was: we had inserted the affirma-

coming out. I am going into a different dimension and I have just com-

tion developed for the Gateway Program at the beginning of each experi-

pletely slowed down. And I am right at the opening of this point. And mental session in the lab. Other than that, we made no significant changes now I am gently coming through and everything is green. It is so bright in Hemi-Sync frequencies, basic environment, or methods of presentation.

that it is almost blinding because of coming out of a dark tunnel. It is a It may have been the second part that was the catalyst: different feeling. Now it is a real strong energy that seems to be pressing against me. It is a great feeling now. This is a new energy level. I feel a

… Also, I deeply desire the help and cooperation, the assistance, the strong— everything around me is green. It is so bright that it is taking me understanding of those individuals whose wisdom, development, and exa minute to adjust and to absorb where I am."

perience are equal to or greater than my own. I ask their guidance and There was one "small" problem. Once our subjects passed through the protection from any influence or any source that might provide me with light or achieved the out-of-body state, they were not particularly inter-

less than my stated desires.

ested in hour after hour of dull searching for new effective sound frequency patterns. They would still perform the tasks, but beyond the tunIt was suddenly as if a curtain had been lifted. Almost every time one of nel and into the light was Paris! Keeping them on the farm was certainly our Explorers went into the out-of-body state or

simply into an advanced no trivial problem. So we had to play a little.

Focus 12, they encountered intelligent beings who were more or less will-And play we did. We sent our subjects to explore the moon, which they ing to communicate—and could do so. After several years of finding only found a very dull place. We went to other parts of the solar system, the barrenness, the effect upon us was overwhelming. We sometimes had other planets, and found them, as far as we could determine, nothing but difficulty knowing how to handle it. Here is a portion of the transcript mile after mile of craters and mountains or simply layers of turbulent from the file recording of one of these early meetings.

was creating this image of her and could not really tell whether this was her own image of herself or not. She, likewise, was creating an image of SS/TC (PHYSICIST) XAL—8:12 MIN #332

me in a likeness to which she was familiar, and whether or not these

“Back into regular 12. Had two encounters— the first with an

unseen likenesses were similar, mine and hers, there was no way to tell, so we left intelligence who replied to a general query for communications. Sort of that question. Then I got an itch of some intensity that began on my an ‘I’ll talk to you,’ but it was obvious that he (I guess I say ‘he’ because I neck and tried to explain that I existed in another reality besides the one I got the feeling of a ‘he’) wanted to listen and said ‘O.K., what do you was sharing with her and that I had a physical body elsewhere and that want to talk about?’ And as I tried to put the burden on him or it for the physical body had an itch on its neck and was disturbing the focus of some information about itself, about its environment, I got the feeling it my attention, and that is why I seemed to be fading in and out as my was angry for being bothered. Sort of like bumping into a busy New York attention wavered. She seemed to think that was quite incredible. I don’t pedestrian. The second was much more interesting. The second commu-believe she believed me at all. She just kind of ignored that statement nication, I didn’t just get an intelligence, but got a complete visual like one might ignore somebody who says an irrational thing. I asked image. Female, late thirties, and she was very pleased to communicate about her physics. She took me to another place where there was another and offered to show me around and showed me a lot of the facility. I entity. This one male, and there was a writing surface, much like a don % know what else to call it that she was in. We walked up to this wall blackboard, but not a blackboard, whereupon he attempted to explain the nature of things there. We had no success at all with his writing. The and two big doors swung open and there was nothing there that seemed marks he made on this surface, this blackboard, were totally unintel-impressive at all, but she thought that these markings and

irregularities of ligible to me, and after a few efforts we gave up. We tried to go to the surface were quite something. I don't know why. Ididn't relate to it at pictures. All the time we could communicate telepathically. Pictures were all. I asked her if she was in any way familiar with physical matter O.K. He drew some pictures, and from the telepathic exchange, I felt existence as I knew it and she asked me to explain. I really didn't know that their science, indeed their concept of their existence and reality was how to explain physical matter, so I asked if it was all right if I came in many ways similar to our own, in that they were fixed in that reality back and that I wanted to leave to report in. She seemed a little dismayed and could not travel out of it, as I had traveled out of physical reality into that I was taking off after getting partway through the tour, but she said, theirs. I do not know whether they even believed that there was another

'all right,' and that brings us up to the present moment."

reality other than their own. They had a physical science much as we do, in that objects in their reality obeyed specific laws. I tried to see if any of **Monitor:** "Very good. In your return, try and understand the type of their laws were similar to ours, such as gravitation. It was very difficult to energy being utilized there."

tell. I could not separate what was their concept of their reality, all I could do was translate into my own concepts, meaning I did not see them (TIME LAPSE: 3 minutes)

floating around in air, but whether that was because they experience a thing like gravity like we do or whether that was a

function of my own

“O.K., I thought I had better report back again before I forgot much of experience, visualizing humanoids not floating in the air, I could not tell.

what went on. Reestablished contact with same female. She was quite But I did feel that they had a basic physical science that ruled the objects surprised that I did return. Pleased. At first, I began to wonder what this of their reality. They did not move things around by thought processes or intelligence really looked like to itself. Was I just imposing my own anything like that. It seemed like an earth-type physical reality to them, although I don’t recognize many of their devices and structures— seemed image of female humanoid form? And we discussed this, realizing that I 4 2 FAR

JOURNEYS

EXPLORER TEAM I

43

very foreign, but they seemed to be fixed and isolated within those devices and structures. Somehow I appear to them as one of their own kind, SS/BY (ELECTRONICS ENGINEER) 26:20 MIN #325

whether that’s humanoid or not, I don’t know. Maybe I should have tried to find out where they think I came from or who they think I might be.”

"/ recontacted the source and asked the source about his pointers and perspective and asked him if he was familiar with the earth and his reply was 'Yes, that is my territory.' I got the idea that the earth was sort of his Here is another, to give you a feeling for a different point of contact: assigned beat. I also got the idea that he and other entities are made available to us to help us maximize or get through our earth experience. I SS/JCA (SOCIAL SERVICES EXECUTIVE) 6:27 MIN #356

don't mean 'get through' like 'get it over with.' I mean to help us get as

"/ am talking with my green man and practicing going up and down to much out of it as possible. They are there like explainers or helpers and where they are … and found out why he has this green robe. He said not particularly assigned to earth duty. I then asked about geological conditions in the next ten years. He picked data up from my mind and that he did not need it but that I needed it to make me more comfortable knew what I was thinking about and said, 'I didn't know that informa-with him. And he said that I still have some fears, so he still wants me to tion was available.' He was surprised that this information was given out feel more comfortable with going in and out of my body… . I want to or had been released. He was not aware that such information was being sit and talk with him some more… . he just kind of sat down and released."

talked about me and where I am. And he told me that he is kind of my overseer. And he is responsible, somewhat responsible for my growth and Another type occurred in this fashion:

development. Overseer in that contact and responsibility. Apparently he has been through a lot of lives and different lifetimes … and I don't know if they are a part of him or not.

SS/SHE (PSYCHIATRIC COUNSELOR) 16:14 MIN #314

"I feel very comfortable here, like this is where I belong and I have felt

"… Point of light. Other than that, I don't perceive anything."

like this before. Think I made some progress, because this time I did not need any folks to help me. I was just there seeing them. More like a vote Monitor: "How does the light feel?"

of confidence than anything else. I asked him what he was doing here

"It feels like a star. When I focus on it, I begin to float."

and he said, 'Here, that is something that you are trying to pinpoint.

Here isn't … here does not matter.' I don't know why but I really feel Monitor: "Experiment with the light."

very tired. I feel like I am ready to come back all of a sudden. I noticed it before, that it was like a flash, but it was dark in here. There was a

“Now they are getting closer, now I am getting closer to them.”

surprise because it was just like a flash of light that came on.”

(TIME LAPSE: 2:55)

Far more significant were the instances where our Explorers quickly

“made friends” with a being or beings (entities?) who seemed to have no New Voice: “How are you?”

special interest in or connection to or with our Explorer. Here is a sample of an Explorer response to one of these:

Monitor: “I am very glad to meet you. I am very thankful that you came.”

New Voice: “It is hard to get here.”

be some four or five beings, one of whom acted as a spokesman. Here is the transcript of the recording of a major step in that

relationship.

Monitor: “What is the difficulty?”

SS/ROMC (OFFICE MANAGER) 8:05 MIN #306

New Voice: “There are many layers to penetrate.”

“/ was watching what happened and experiencing at the same time.

Monitor: “We are very, very grateful that you did penetrate the layers to The four helpers just helped to lift, as this energy body just came to my us. We will help in any way that we can.”

physical body. The four helpers helped to lift my energy body out, and I just felt real light and really, really good and got the sense then that this **New Voice:** “Her color pattern is very good. We must find a way to help energy form that was then sort of implanted or just, in other words, it was her let go.”

in my body then. It was just energizing my body. It was just light and well protected, and I felt good being out and felt very light and then I Monitor: “Do you have any recommendations?”

could sense that energy of being. One person was just talking about how they could or would like to experiment in trying to use my body sort of **New Voice:** “There needs to be a period in which she goes very deep.”

like a transmitting set between dimensions. I’ll be able to step out

and feel very safe and confident with these helpers and light and happy and Monitor: “A longer preliminary period, then, would you suggest?”

still be able to observe, if I would like, what’s going on with the energy **New Voice:** “Possibly. It will get easier as the trust builds. There is still a being.”

lot of fear.”

Monitor: “Do they want to perform any other experiment now?”

Monitor: “I am very grateful for your concern for her.”

“O.K. The feeling that maybe they would just like to experiment a **New Voice:** ‘Wow she is feeling a lot of disharmony. I have taken her to a little bit with talking maybe through my vocal cords, but I still am not place where she can rest.”

out far enough that I might get out of the way. It will be with practice and experimentation, and then as I learn to be less, I mean be more In this case, the subject had no memory whatsoever of the event or relaxed and just let it flow and go along and not let my mind stop it. The encounter. The last that she remembered was working with the colors.

more they practice, it will be able to flow more rapidly, so they just want Changes in voice quality and monitoring instruments supported the idea to experiment for just a short time with trying to come through with some of another “presence” or personality in

the body of SHE. We had much thoughts through my vocal cords and my mental faculties, so to speak. So discussion of the advisability of continuing along this route, in spite of the we will just see what, we will try to see what happens here."

immense interest and excitement it generated among our group. The fact of the matter is, I suspect, there was at that stage no actual means that we Monitor: "Right. I will be here if you need me."

knew of to "turn off" such communication. I suspect also that no one

"O.K."

wanted to anyway, at the least, myself.

One Explorer developed a very close relationship with what appeared to 46

(TIME LAPSE: 3:23)

out and allow her to step back fully into her own body. It is a privilege.

Thank you, dear friends."

New Voice: "Greetings. I am speaking through these vocal cords and I would like to speak to this young lady as she observes what is taking Her confidence in the group was so great that their assistance was very place. Her physical body is seeming to heat up very rapidly. Sometimes it much standard operating procedure. For example, in order to help her get will be in a cool stage, but other times it will be in a heated stage, and out of the body, four of these beings would position themselves, two on the molecules of the energy body, which is working through her physical each side, and simply "lift her out." This made it all the simpler to get on body, is working at a more rapid rate and, therefore, right at this time, with what had to be done.

there is a feeling of heat surrounding this body. This young lady will An interesting sidelight to this particular routine took place some understand what is happening when we first come into her aura. There months later. The Explorer ROMC usually had a lab session at five o'clock will be the feeling of warmth, and as she gets more relaxed and is able to on Wednesdays. On this particular Wednesday she had canceled several begin her float above her physical body, she will experience as the cool-

days in advance. By coincidence on that Wednesday, a female psychologist from the Washington area dropped in to visit. She was quite skeptical ness and feeling of relaxation, complete relaxation, the feeling of com-

of what we were doing, and we spent several hours that afternoon

going plete calm, complete peace, and complete security. And then there will over our methods and techniques. Finally, in order to help her understand be the light stage and the coolness that will come over her and she will a little better, I suggested that she go into booth 2 and lie down and listen know that she is gently going out of the body, but will always be in to some of the Hemi-Sync patterns and find out for herself if she had any complete control if she so chooses. She is always there to observe, to response to them. She agreed, fully expecting that there would be nothing speak at any time, or can always even choose to step into other dimen-

unusual about what was to happen. With her skepticism, I was inclined to sions; and there will be those who will help her into those other dimen-

agree.

sions, and while this is taking place, we will work with trying to bring After about five minutes in the booth with the Hemi-Sync sound in her through information through these vocal cords. This is a special experi-

ears, her voice came through the intercom speaker. “There is someone ment of stepping into knowledge dimensions, and this could never be else in the booth with me.” I pushed the microphone button. “Are you done were it not for you with the knowledge that you bring and with the sure?” I asked. “Of course I am sure. As a matter of fact, there are four great light and confidence that you surround this whole project that you of them.”

I made contact again. “Are you sure there are four?” “I can work on. I have worked with others who will come in as we reach differ-

perceive them very clearly. There are two at my feet and two at my ent dimensions and levels. We will not say higher or lower— they are head.”

light dimensions as we break through into the various levels. It is easier I pushed the mike button again. “What are they doing?” “They are to bring through the knowledge. I am working now on the level where trying to lift me out of my body, if you can believe that.” Suddenly I this entity is presently, but we will work together through various levels.

knew the answer. I looked up at the clock. It was ten minutes after There are others who are working with her. I speak in terms of ‘we’

five—on Wednesday afternoon. ROMC’s friends can get trapped in because each time that I come, we come as a group, there are the others, routines, too. I burst out laughing. I was about to reach for the who are the assistants and will always be there to bring the energy levels microphone and explain it to the woman in the booth when I thought up and to work. And we say that you are doing exactly what is necessary better of it.

to help the situation to be in that perfected state whereby the energies I pushed the mike button. “What are they doing now?”

can be released into other levels of consciousness. And now we will step 48

FAR JOURNEYS

EXPLORER TEAM I

49

“They have stopped trying to lift me out of my body,” her voice came industry would like very much to know how to do this at a commercial back. “And they are arguing,”

level. However, of course, the results that we have are not significant It was difficult to keep a calm voice as I responded. “What are they enough to be commercially viable. Not yet, at least.

arguing about?”

One night, when we got into our cars parked outside some twenty feet

“The four want to lift me out, and now there is a fifth that is arguing from booth 2, we found that the batteries were dead in all three cars.

with them that they should not.”

They jump-started quite easily, as it was a summer night, and stayed in

“Do you want them to?” I asked.

charge afterward. Cars parked on the other side, or sixty feet away, were

” I don’t think so,” her voice came back. “Now they have stopped argu-

unaffected. Thus we learned we had better not park too close to booth 2

ing and they are going away, so I guess there is no problem.”

during certain experiments with specific Explorers. Exactly why this took I smiled as I pushed the mike button and said, “Well, just relax a bit place—and still does so—we don’t know.

and I’ll get you out in a few minutes. Are you comfortable now?”

In the current Explorer group, only two remain from the original team.

“Oh yes,” she responded. “/ am fine.”

The tide of personal events has moved the others away from the area, I left her in the booth for some ten to fifteen minutes and watched as their lives visibly altered by the experience. The original material is still the gauges showed that she was relaxing into a light sleep. After a suitable being processed. Meanwhile, more is entering through sessions in our new time I awakened her

and brought her out much refreshed. She was some-lab facility.

what bewildered by the experience and made a valiant attempt to stay Perhaps we need a few more doctors, with other credentials.

skeptical. I showed her the appointment schedule that usually called for an experimental session, then I played a recording of the actual “lifting out” techniques as described by the Explorer subject.

She finally left, a very puzzled and preoccupied individual.

Things like that are hard on belief systems when they happen to most people. The problem was that so many were happening to us. There were many suspenseful moments.

It should be noted here that reaching this state of trust and communication and/or association with these friendly entities and beings took hours and hours of preliminary contact, plus “third party” communication discussions. It did not happen overnight to the degree indicated here. A great mass of material provided through such beings had to do with information of a philosophic nature or suggestions and advice regarding the persona] well-being of the Explorers involved. In no case was any drug or any other medication used in any of our experiments.

Moreover, there are indications that a magnetic field is generated of a type with which our science is unfamiliar. One of the results of this is to set up magnetic fields in nearby electrical loops as well as audio cables.

Another is to affect nearby magnetic tape to such an extent that a "print-through" takes place from one layer of tape to another. The recording NEW ASSOCIATIONS

51

"feel" of the entity, the hooded robe is discarded and the Explorer can 5. New

perceive nothing, but still senses the radiation that is the entity.

4. In speaking to the Explorer, the being is limited in vocabulary to Associations

that in the memory bank of said Explorer. Therefore it often shows hesitation in searching for the correct word to express what needs to be described—and often there is no such word in the memory of the individual.

5. During visits by certain of these beings, especially when they use the In hundreds of hours of Explorer communication to date, about one-third physical body to speak through, there is a change in body voltage and consists of those instances where, with the Explorer's permission, their other biomonitoring data in the Explorer.

friendly entities take over their physical bodies and speak using the Ex-Without further comment, here are excerpts from various sessions.

plorer’s vocal cords. The other two-thirds are contacts made by the Explorer, who then converses with the nonphysical third party and reports SS/TC (PHYSICIST) 22:30 MIN #372

the conversation. In both cases, the monitor in the control room (living

“I’ve gotten all kinds of things, and I’ve been trying to sort them and physical domain!) becomes a part of such discussions.

put them into some kind of rational order. First of all, I had the impres-

What we call the Explorer Material is a combination of fascinating, sion that physical matter reality— inasmuch of I guess what is normally baffling, awe-inspiring, thought-provoking, sometimes boring data that is called reality, not only physical matter, but also a certain amount of our certainly much in conflict with many of the belief systems that we have daydreaming and our imaginative intuitive qualities— is part of a, sort of within our culture and civilization. The most important possibility by far like a large daydream or thought from a higher consciousness, fust as we is the reality of the Explorer Material, their experiences, and especially can daydream and invent characters and situations, we are characters in a these friendly entities who assist them. Second to this is the fact that the situation that was invented or dreamt, quite consciously dreamt by a process is ongoing, expanding.

more advanced sort of consciousness. The part that we have to play in To resolve that possibility one way or another will take

some doing and this daydream is one of education, one of learning and bettering our-

some capacities far beyond the limits of our organization.

selves, striving to become more. Now, I’m not clear why this kind of over-

In examining the Explorer sessions in consensus, certain elements re-

consciousness or over-soul is having this daydream, but I have the feeling peat themselves:

that it is for its own education. It learns as we learn. Anyway, we have 1. Whatever they may be, such nonphysical third parties have the abil such limited consciousness to begin because if you are going to set up a ity to radiate a warmth of friendliness that evokes complete trust—even situation where you expect certain processes to happen— these processes, with their lives—on the part of the Explorers.

of course, are our education, our learning— you don’t set up the most complex and involved experiment or situation. You set up a simple one 2. Such beings are first of all totally solicitous as to the well-being of the that you can produce, that still has the qualities to get the results that you Explorer and spend much time in attempting to advance the best want. This is the reason that we are seemingly of such limited conscious-

mental and physical state of the human being with whom they are ness. But the reason that we have an option to develop our consciousness

“associated.”

more fully is part of the experiment itself. We are to learn and grow and 3. A being usually appears to the Explorer in the form of a hooded evolve and become and learn through experience in doing, and as closely figure whose face is hidden in shadow and apparently invisible to the Explorer. Once the Explorer becomes completely familiar with the 52

as we can come to understanding and being a part of, our understanding fourteen, and when a person attains, when a consciousness attains level a part of our creator, our over-soul daydreamer, if you like, then sort of fourteen, it can no longer go any higher unless it is willing to change its the more power to us. The more of that we can understand, then the form of consciousness. Levels fifteen through twenty-one are what you more learning that we’ve acquired. So it’s not really— well, I take that call human life on this earth. When a person progresses to level twenty-back. It’s not so much that we are driven to expand our awareness or that one, he then has the choice of going higher

or staying within the realm of we should be, other than it's available, and being available makes it a human form, but he cannot go higher unless he is willing to give up direction in which we can evolve if we so choose. That's a little jumbled human form."

to myself, but that's the way it's coming out."

Monitor: "Give up being human?"

SS/SHE (SOCIAL WORKER) 18 MIN #366

Other Voice: "Levels twenty-two through twenty-eight are your bridge.

"I've been on a, almost like a vortex I was caught in. Twenty-two is not They are your levels that you enter upon death. You are on level twenty physical in any way. Twenty-one can be either physical or nonphysical, and because that is an ascending level, you can enter into the realm depending on where you choose to focus the energy.

beyond physical life, but you cannot stay there unless you are willing to

"It's neither up nor down nor forward or backward. Twenty-one, all give up your human form. Is that clear?"

appear very comfortable, but very different. The sense I have like a rain-bow going before me of colors, and they are like the colors

that Miranon has described, but they are all going at different beats and moving. It is **Monitor**: “That much is clear, yes.”

like I see a spectrum of 22 through, I don’t know, through 28, something like that and they are all interwoven. I think I could draw it for you. I like Other Voice: “And then once a person or a consciousness— we are talking 21, so I have just kind of stayed here and the sense that I have, it’s like, about consciousness— reaches level twenty-eight, the bridge is crossed, when you asked that, I got the illusion of looking at a sunset and having and from that point on for a consciousness to evolve higher, it would not it sense that the horizon is the end, but that it’s only an illusion because again assume human form of any kind, not even as a learning experience.

as you go forward in the levels, new levels arise.”

I will never incarnate again as a human— as another form of life, yes, but not as a human. The words are very hard because your plane of existence (TIME LAPSE: 1:22)

is not the same. Perhaps I can explain it by asking you to image seven of the circles, which would give you the forty-nine levels. The first three Other Voice: “I apologize for being so late, but I need to thank you and to levels are physical matter as you know physical matter. They are your tell you that I am glad you received my message. If you would like to plants, your animals, your humans. The fourth circle is your bridge, your explore these levels, I would be very happy to do so with you.”

realm, your center for that overall plane. It is the time in which a consciousness can choose whether to go back into the lower levels or to **Monitor**: “I would appreciate it very much.”

transcend into the higher levels, and many consciousnesses do choose to go back into the lower levels in physical form. The upper three circles are Other Voice: “As I have said to you earlier, plants exist on levels one the realm that in your consciousness is called the spiritual realm, and through seven. They are on a vibrational rate on the levels one through here much of the work is done. I could not help someone who was not on seven. It is the same pattern. Animals exist on the levels eight through the eighteenth level very much because my plane, my vibrational rate

would be different. This is why it is hard for me to help you with specific to open up my mind and allows me to communicate with other personali-problems. I can give you ideas, but I cannot give you the direct guidance I ties, other brains so to speak, to communicate with, to learn from, to talk could if you were on level eighteen. Our planes do touch since yours is an to.”

ascending spiral— an ascending, what is your word for that? It is an ellipse. It is an ascending ellipse, and therefore I can cross and

communi-Monitor: “At what point do you first enter to become a part of this cate with you, but not as directly. Once I reach level forty-nine, which I physical body?”

will, I then leave all of this realm of existence. It does not mean I have reached the highest point by any means. It simply means I have left this

“Apparently when, although fertilization is a mechanical thing, a group of seven, this overall group of seven. Imagine, if you will, the seven chemical thing … the personalities out of body are very much aware circles enclosed in an even larger circle upon which seven more circles are of when things happen and choose at that time to develop the fetus or stacked, which is in turn enclosed in even a great circle. Then you can not to develop. So part of my energy at this moment may be used to have some idea of what infinity is. It does not ever stop.”

develop a personality and I may have several personalities going on at the same time, being developed at the same time.”

Monitor: “Well, I must confess that ‘it’ is kind of hard on my tiny, poor physical matter consciousness.”

Monitor: “At the same time in the physical kind of reality?”

Other Voice: “That is true. I must— it is very hard on my consciousness

“Yes, yes. They tell me right now, one is old, one is crippled, one is

also. I feel at times, because I am very near to completing this circle, that male, and where they are I am not ready to know… . and I could feel I have accomplished a major evolvement for my consciousness, but then being old and crippled but I could not feel being male."

when I try to explain it, I realize just how far I have yet to go and how little I have actually gone through. Because my level of consciousness is **Monitor**: "Is this entering of the physical body limited just to the planet one of love, I leave you with love. Good day."

Earth or other planets?"

SS/SCA (EXECUTIVE) 34 MIN #402

"We go to other places. There are beings on other places and our **Monitor**: "Ask him to describe this interactive unit that is you now and energy is aware of all these other places."

your physical body. What is this relationship between this energy form and your physical body?"

Monitor: "Do we inhabit physical bodies in these other places?"

"Part of my energy that I have when I'm out of body is used to build

"Not like human Earth bodies … but … other forms of things my body. When I use this energy to build my body here on earth, it or

beings."

blocks … or curves my thinking processes so it doesn't go out of body.

The thinking process needs to be curved to communicate with the other **Monitor**: "What are some of the other forms on planets? What are these personalities here on earth again. This is one type of communication other forms?"

when I'm out of body. I take most of that energy that is used for my body with me but enough to keep the body informed is left here. It permits me

"One's like a gelatin kind of thing … slimy kinds of things."

FAR JOURNEYS

56

NEW ASSOCIATIONS

57

Monitor: "Are these located anywhere near the planet Earth?"

Monitor: "All right, then I think you have given us a lot of material to think about, so thank your guide and ask if there is a name that he

“Thousands of light-years away.” **Monitor:** “In this energy, is there goes by.”

a set of rules in which one operates?”

“He doesn’t want to give a name right now because he doesn’t want it to interfere with the training that we are doing … be too concrete, I

“I’m not sure what you are asking.” **Monitor**: “Is there a need to be more and more aware and he can do his work better right now without me giving him a name.”

set of rules in which the body operates?”

Monitor: “Ask him if there is any other training exercise that he would

“No, the energy itself decides if the energy itself makes a wrong deci-

like you to perform before we close this session.”

sion, then it destroys itself. If it makes correct decisions it builds or strengthens its personality. It is possible for the energy to destroy itself.”

‘No, he thinks I’ve gone … further than he really anticipated.”

Monitor: “What is classified then as misuse?”

SS/MSL (PSYCHOLOGIST) 8:22 MIN #375

“When it has not added to its present knowledge, when it has not **Monitor**: “Ask your friend how we got here in the first place. How we got gained anything more than it had learned previously. It is more than just on the planet Earth and in space-time.”

a question of good or bad or good or evil. For example, killing by itself would not mean that it was destroying the energy by killing the animal or

” I felt like I was being taken back in time and could feel a bombardment another human being. Not just adding to the knowledge, but enhancing of particles … of matter … and actually seeing the bombardment of the personality, the deed actually enhances previous knowledge or under-particles. Some particles that fuse together actually became a working standing that is used as addition … strength. If the killing was for the mechanism. I guess the only thing that we can understand and relate it to sake of killing, if nothing was learned, nothing gained, then it could would be like a computer. And as a fusion of these particles occurred, destroy the overall personality. But there also seems to be a hierarchy of they actually started communicating with one another by the heat of the understanding and as the energy is strengthened it moves up a hierarchy light or the energy that they were radiating. And once they knew they of knowing.”

were communicating with one another, and that is trying to communicate on the same level. And there were lots of these things. And **Monitor:** “Then where does this hierarchy of

knowing lead to?”

they wanted to find out what they could do with this communication—

how far they could go, could expand, could see, could think. They devel-

“It’s very important to become a move toward a unified whole like oped Earth and actually built Earth. They took a part of themselves, there is one on the top… . As the personalities move and merge the played around with animals, people, and they realized the number. How more knowledgeable … the level of understanding increases as they many they could produce just from one. Like one of these things could move up. It doesn’t make sense verbally but visually it makes a lot of have thousands of people, parts of them, situated everywhere. The problem sense.”

after a time, though, they created better minds, or thinking ma-

chines, and the event that the original should die or disintegrate. They

“They are creation. Like I said before, months ago, we are experi- are not long-lasting, in the sense of thousands and thousands of years, ments. We are the tester to see how far this spirit can think, can fuse they are not forever kinds of things. Our spirits seemed to be an improved particles together. Can see what its potential is. They are still experi-model of the original. The original has disintegrated.”

menting to see what their own potential is and we are one part of that experiment.”

Monitor: “Did the spirit originate in this process?”

Monitor: “Are we an important or a minor part of this experiment?”

“The spirit was a result of that. The spirit resulted from the fusion of these particles. The particles were matter fused together. That was spirit

“They are afraid that all the brains that they created could fathom it or also. It was and that spirit lived for thousands and thousands and thou-could take it. It is like some of the brains that they have developed would short out.”

sands of years and it disintegrated and before it disintegrated it rebuilt something that was better and it knew that it was going to die. It was **Monitor:** “Have they created all of the human brains that are on the going to disintegrate and it created the spirit that I now communicate planet Earth?”

with. So in a sense, they both can be called spirits or super minds. But your spirit could be and is different from my spirit."

"Yes."

Monitor: "How many such spirits are there such as the one you are com-

Monitor: "I see."

municating with?"

"They know everything that is going on.. To clarify one thing, when

"Only a thousand." **Monitor:** "Did they remain humans have offspring, they don't necessarily control the offspring but it is part of the experimentation to see what results from the mating. When in the vicinity of Earth?"

two parts of a spirit or two different spirits actually mate, what happens?

… they don't know and that is part of the experimentation."

"They don't know that term 'vicinity.' Vicinity to them is, as long as it is within millions of millions of miles of their reach it is in their vicinity.

Monitor: "Can your spirit be in touch with my spirit?"

To us it means very close. Their minds can reach out over millions of light-years."

"Yes. Anytime."

Monitor: "Are there communications with other spirits or other intelli-

Monitor: "Ask your spirit to see if he can be in touch with my spirit and gent entities?"

see if there is any special message that my spirit has for me."

"They have created them. If they have created them, yes, there are."

"/ am feeling uncomfortable about going to other spirits and he was laughing at me for doing this, for feeling uncomfortable. Even though I **Monitor:** "Why do they give so much attention to man?"

did it with my mother. I just better come on back."

FAR JOURNEYS

60

NEW ASSOCIATIONS

61

“I defy logic and am beyond your conceptual imaginings.

Monitor: “Right. And then, thank your spirit.”

“I live and move and have my being in all there is. You have sought me amiss.

“O.K.”

“My countenance is seen within each face of my Father’s creation.

Look upon your brother and see my face.

SS/NVP (DECORATOR) 92:30 MIN #388

“Bend over a still pool. Do not be deceived. The image that you see

“Blessed are they who seek me. In seeking me, their long period of reflected is my own.

forgetfulness is coming to an end. They are awakening to who they truly

“Do you not see the truth now?

are— a living part of me, manifesting life and radiating love.

“Learn of me. Take within your hand **a** leaf, **a** stone, a drop of water,

“You have forgotten to look for me, much less gaze upon my counte-and know that nothing exists that does not **contain** me.

nance, oh, ye of little faith. There are countless numbers who live in the

“Have you not known that I am eternal life **and** therefore recognize expectancy of my coming. In truth, I never left.

neither the past nor the future? Only the now, that is. Live in the now,

“Let him who has ears to hear, let him hear, now.

with me.

“You seek me amidst your blindness. You look upon me without recog-

“I stand in the light, as you stand in the light. **But** you do not know of nition. You touch my hand and know not whom you have touched.

your light. I am here to show you that your light and my light are one and

“You proclaim my name and my teachings as it suits you and the the same. Once you recognize this divine light to be a part of all that is, occasion. Awaken, behold the reality of my being that is among you.

will you then begin to understand your own relationship to life, to your

“I am the earthquake, wind, and fire.

creator, and thereby to your own sonship eternal.

“I am the still small voice piercing the thunderous tumult.

“I neither slumber nor sleep and you must leant that your soul neither

“I am the peace beyond all understanding.

slumbers nor sleeps. Once you realize this, you are aware of your spiritual

“I am the light that guides all men to the Father.

vitality and wakefulness to your high consciousness. In so knowing you

“I am the love that overcometh all things.

will understand that I am truly closer than your hands and your feet. In

“lam the light that illumines the minds of men. lam the sustenance this knowing, in this knowledge, we are one.

of men's souls.

"Live in truth. Be truth. Live in beauty. Become an artist in living.

"I am your life and you are my own.

"Live in me and let me express you.

"I am the very breath you breathe.

"I reside in all space and no space, all time and no time.

"We are one in the Father.

"Once you turn and become a part of my reality, all power is restored

"Do not despair, I will never leave thee nor forsake thee, nor can you unto you. This is the power that makes you one with all things. This is truly forsake me, for we are one.

the power that will set you free.

"Let the old way be gone. It must die and its ashes be blown to the

"My children, abide in me."

four corners of the earth. The new is emerging but you must change your perspective. Do not look for me in the form of a man. The time is not yet.

All of the Explorer Material has one characteristic in common. They But look for me in the life that speaks to you in your everyday activities.

pose more questions than they answer. As they say, we have a problem You have looked amiss.

here. We thought our “new” associa-

“I have no limitations and am not bound by physical dimensions.

tions would provide answers. But for every answer, at least fifty new questions arise out of the Explorer Material.

Segue

Therefore, it became time to stop counting the trees and look at the forest instead.

And so we did.

Not being at all loath to borrow a word or term from one cultural context and apply it aptly here, “segue” is defined as a proper interlude of musical melodies and harmonies that moves from the

conclusion of one composition to the introduction of another. "Proper" infers a transition that smoothly loses that previous theme or mood and sets the stage for what is to come.

So this is a segue. The movement from what we have labeled "local traffic," i.e., events and activities that relate directly to here-now time—space, filled with much congestion, motivations, devious highways and byways, misconceptions, overwhelming emotions, detours, road repairs, confusing and conflicting signposts, inaccurate road maps, baits and lures both subtle and obnoxious—and dreams, ideas, learning, love …

To "interstate," where virtually all of the rules, patterns, illusions, and the rest of "local traffic," with few exceptions, are nonexistent.

To begin the segue, here is the mix of premises and conclusions we had reached by mid-1984:

1. All humans move into the out-of-body state during sleep. Going, falling, dropping asleep is simply a process of moving out of phase with physical time-space. As the event takes place, the various stages of sleep are readily interpreted if viewed from this perspective. Thus deep or "delta" sleep represents the point where consciousness is completely detached from physical reality, and the physical body is operating on an autonomic basis with preprogrammed alert and alarm systems to recall consciousness if needed. The fact that most human consciousnesses do not or cannot recall or remember these nightly excursions is insufficient proof that they do not take place. A night of OD'ing on booze can provide the same degree of amnesia.

2. A form of dynamic energy yet to be identified and measured by main-

w

64

FAR JOURNEYS

SEGUE

65

stream human civilization is present in all carbon-based organic life. It is Here is a series of excerpts from different Explorer sessions. They are this essence in organized form that enters the physical body prior to birth even more startling when the actual report is heard, taken out of context and departs at death presumably more educated and with a minimum of just as we are doing here:

wear and tear. The difference between the human version and that of a cow or a worm is only a degree of complexity of such organization.

SS/ROMC 6:45 MIN #322

3. The dominant waking consciousness that Man considers of paramount importance in the scheme of his existence is but a part —and perhaps the

“Two discs came to me. At first it looked like two big eyes. I was put lesser—of the various forms thereof used by and/or available to him. The on one of them. I am spinning around and there is a light being put on addition of other parts can be made systematically, albeit carefully, to the me. I had a pain in one part of my body and they are working on that.

dominant without danger or destruction. The result may be of a magni They are spinning me around on this disc and shooting a light beam on tude beyond the comprehension of the present dominant, therefore en me. My body is heavy because of this physical pain I had when I woke up gendering, at the least, anxieties—at the most, total rejection.

this morning. I feel sluggish today and not as clear as before, so they are 4. Human consciousness is but a manifestation of a system generated trying to help me. I say ‘they.’ I feel there is someone there, but it looks under (2). As a vibrational pattern—multilayered and of many interacting like two discs and a light. I was put on one disc and I don’t know what and resonating frequencies—it responds to and acts upon like patterns happened to the other disc. I am still lying on one disc. It is getting more from external sources. The key to greater utilization thus may be the light. There is light over all my body. I think the light is coming from the creation and application of external vibration at appropriate resonating other disc which is up over me. It is as if I am between two energy discs.”

frequencies so as to enhance a desired or needed specific.

5. Human and other patterns of consciousness are inherently nonphysical.

Monitor: “Ask who they are.”

As such, they are not time-space-dependent. Once released from physical restraints, they move into ambience and environment in accordance with

“O.K. I just got the answer back that ‘we are a source of light and the then total energy matrix generated by each and the complexity con energy which your body needs right now!’ ”

tained therein. No belief system, illusion, action, or thought incurred dur ing a sojourn in time-space can alter this basic process. In short, like it or **Monitor:** “Do you feel any results from the energy?”

not, you’re going to continue to do and be after you can no longer hang in there physically. There is no rest not only for the wicked but for everyone

“At first I was feeling out of it, but I am starting to feel a little more else.

consciously energized.”

6. In the awe-inspiring cloud of cosmology that has emanated from the Explorers and their contacts, almost unnoticed is an underlying mosaic of **Monitor:** “Report when you have any change.”

action that becomes an astounding potential when examined separately.

We would not have become aware of it ourselves except that we were

“O.K. I am supposed to tell you what is happening, because it helps. I exposed time after time to various details of its use.

keep sort of sniffing a little bit, and I get the feeling that it is going to It is the display and application of a science—call it technology —which help lift the vibration with my voice to keep on the level. I went onto that is totally absent from our human culture. We simply don’t know anything disc that I had gone on before, and I felt like it was twirling around very about it nor do we have any accepted means by which to begin to gather rapidly. It is sort of a balance— an energy balancing— and then I sensed information as to its nature or content.

from the center with this light beam that was sort of centering down on 66

me. Then they were working on an area of my body that shows up dark.

that conscious self that she sees in the mirror, and that she experiences in So I felt that it was like they were putting some little, I don't know what her waking state. She will be much more prepared to go into the mul-you call them, like little stakes into my abdomen. They were being put tidimensional levels of the consciousness, and this is why we are working one by one right across my abdomen. And after these little stakes were on various levels, and not only the visual. This is very important to work put in one by one, then I felt that they were working with different colors, on the visual, but also we are working with the other senses as well."

especially a violet and a blue. The beam came from the back of me, through my spine and through these stakes that had been put right across SS/JCA 39:30 MIN #396

my abdomen. They were doing some healing work. I'm being taken off this disc now. They are going to start working to help me to go into the Monitor: "Ask him if he can help you communicate with some other next level."

mind on some other planet."

"He did, and briefly when I was talking just a second ago, he showed SS/MJL 11:23 MIN #351

me and I quickly went to this other place and … I saw a person, not

"When I go up I have to leave that energy ball back down with my

really a person, a being and a … a place that was a yucky kind of body. What I'm supposed to do is put the energy ball right down my green. That had a bright sky, but was kind of cold. And people live under spine and when I take off. I will try it on and this will keep protection on mounds. That's weird … "

my physical body and I feel then that they are saying then at that point, they will be able to talk through me and work through me and I will feel SS/TC 21:30 MIN #392

completely comfortable, and that I am in control, that I had left my energy ball which I have been working with as part of me, that I will have

"/ went back to where I had been before and the entity there did that there in my body to keep the protection and also that I'm going to be something to me. He came over to me and did something to me and my out exploring other things and they will be able to talk through my vocal perception began to change and since that time I have progressed cords."

through half a dozen or more altered states, each one being different than the other. I tried to strike up other conversations with this entity and he seemed more inclined and he seemed more to say, 'Well, do these things SS/ROMC 9:30 MIN #385

and we are not ready to discuss things yet.' He didn't seem in a very

"I'm just floating up now. Now I'm supposed to stand and observe

talkative mood. He was more interested in my performing these exercises what is going to happen. My ear is ringing now but someone is working than discussing. He came over and his, what I perceive to be hands, in on my face. They are helping to exercise my throat muscles to talk by what I perceive to be head, although this was not really related to a getting me prepared."

physical body. When he did that I could immediately feel these changes in awareness. Some of the states I went through were very specially disori-

Other Voice: "We are trying to show that she is multidimensional, and ented to where I really could not determine up from down to sideways or this is why she is able to see as a great circle of self, of many forms, of the anywhere else. Where I seem to be twisting and kind of rotating spe-self. It appears to her to be like many selves extending from a circle and cially. Until I just lost any kind of sense of orientation. The fact that I between. We are trying to show her there are many, many dimensions of was aware that the states were changing and relating them to my changing one human self. As she can see and understand that she is much more of internal states seemed to be the lesson. Just to observe this."

68

FAR JOURNEYS

SEGUE

69

good … it is a tingle … they are going to work on little spots on my feet. My toes. My big toe. Their fingers now are just working on my SS/JCA7:45 MIN #318

big toe."

" I have just experienced being sucked in a long tube and pushed the other way. I'm like in a cocoon. My hands feel they are clasped up tight.

If one cuts through the purely subjective reporting, even with this small Remember doing that before. Feels kind of neat. Now I'm standing on sample, much becomes apparent:

my head. Now on my side … darkness. But now I'm floating but I'm

* Notice how easily any potential anxieties or fears are overcome by sim in something. I feel someone looking at me. Watching over me. Several ply a pattern of radiation emanating from strangers. If you were feeling people rode watching over me. They are looking down. Looking down your way along in an environment new to you, would you accept so eagerly but they came to see me. No figure, just communication, just his pres-

the appearance of an unknown being?

ence. I can see where we are going, or can I see the rest, or can they come here? He said no, they want to watch me. They want to watch me in this

* The color patterns. Our Explorers interpret them as visual patterns of limbo. Now they are all circled around, bending over, and now they are light. This is the best that they can do to report the presence of some touching me. But I didn't see them. Feel them. They are nice, warm unknown type of radiation. Purple, blue, and green light will not create friendly folk … friendly hands, but they were hands leading me some-

this effect on the human. With our sophisticated knowledge of light fre place. Their presence was all around me leading me someplace. He …

quencies and our use of them, we would long ago have observed such it cares about me. The first thing that came is that we're part of one effects.

another. But we are kind of lost in communicating with one another. It's

* The use of what appears to be specific devices, such as the counter-

there on the tip but it's not out in the open. The white presence is trying revolving discs, which produce an effect totally beyond our comprehen to help us or pushing me. It's kind of a transparent, feeling me… .

sion.

You're going to laugh at this. I've been practicing going in and out

of this

* The ability to remove the energy essence of a human from his physical tunnel, back down and up there. They thought it was kind of important body without disrupting his biologic systems. This technology does this to practice that. So I've been zooming up and zooming down. My body with a casualness and certainty that indicates standard operating proce looks like, you know, through a telescope the long way and you kind of dure. They know what they are doing because they have done it many, zoom in and then you zoom out. A hug and I said, 'I'll see you later.

many times.

* The ability to enter such a vacated human body and operate it to some degree—again, without disrupting said body's normal functions.

SS/MJL 10:10 MIN #367

* Not only can they utilize the vocal cords and the breathing apparatus,

"They are working on my feet now. Two at the end … each of them but they have total access to the memory storage lodged in the individual.

are taking my feet and just giving me a real good foot massage. And as

* They can at will change the temperature of that visited human body, their hands touch my feet I tingle on my feet. These are energy light make it either hot or cold (which is reflected quite accurately on our beings. And they are just very gentle and they are working on a different remote-reading body temperature gauges).

level than my physical foot. They are working on my other body. My

* The ability to move that extracted human essence, once taken from the energy foot and so they are doing some special kind of a touching of my body, to various other sites (realities?), and return, all under perfect con feet now. They are working on my toes. Barely touching my toes. But I trol and what seems to be absolute safety. The trip can be instantaneous can feel a lot of energy between their touch and my energy body. It feels or in “slow motion,” and can penetrate matter as if it does not exist.

70

FAR JOURNEYS

SEGUE

71

* Although this technology does not seem to have the ability to directly valid is the entire project? To this end, responsible parties who wish to affect matter, by some method not visible it can create changes in matter.

replicate such experiments are welcomed.

In other words, there is no evidence that it can produce matter (that is not to say that it cannot; it simply has not as yet). But it can affect an energy Who are the beings who know and use this technology? (Some have structure, which in turn connects to our neurological system, which in admitted that they never have been a human being in physical life exis-turn affects the physical structure.

tence; others were here thousands of years ago. Some have been in physi-

* Perceiving our thoughts, as flickering as they are, is absurdly easy for cal life existence in other parts of the universe in nonhuman form.) Why this technology, but for the most part they apparently don't find it worth are they interested in human life on earth? Are there thousands of them, doing.

millions, billions? (They apparently do have individuality of a sort.) How

* Time and space become our phenomena. This technology understands did such a technology begin? Who developed it? Is there some restriction on our learning such technology and applying it here in time-space/earth?

them from a viewpoint about which we can only speculate. Even the best Is this technology being applied constantly in other ways on earth and in of such speculations do not begin to cover the

nuances implicit in their human affairs that we don't know about and certainly of which we are not approach to the vital conditions under which we exist.

consciously aware?

* The entire history of humankind and earth is available to them in the We do seem to have one answer. In all of our contacts and communica-most minute detail, if needed. Where and how such information is stored tion, the application of this technology seems totally benevolent. There and retrieved is a part of such technology, a seeming unimportant part.

also seem to be rules and restrictions in regard to its use.

Implied also in such information storage is data on the entire physical For this we are humbly grateful. To contemplate any other possibility universe, if there were any reason to require such detail.

could lead to mental disaster. I don't think we could do anything about it

* This technology can produce a beam of energy, which is first translated whatever our stance.

as light, through which the human energy essence can travel back and A key point has surfaced, however. The sum of all my own personal forth, information can flow, and the operators of such technology can experience, that of our work in the laboratory and the thousands of Gate-enter time-space/earth environments. Once

properly perceived, they can way experiments, indicates that all other intelligent species, either in the endow the human mind with the ability to create (enhance?) such a beam physical universe or in other energy systems, use a form of communication of energy.

that is total and certainly nonverbal. When words are used in such com-These observations are based on several hundred encounters with such munication with us, this is a tight narrow-banded tuning, so that they can technology. With our limited contact, the implication is certainly there be understood at least in part.

that we have learned so little about so much. Our attempts to learn more I cannot stress this too much. All other intelligent species use what we in a specific sense have been severely hampered by the knowledge and now call nonverbal communication (NVC). It is something far more than experience of the Explorer through which the information is being trans-what we label body language, telepathy, remote viewing, and the often lated. Also, there is a polite inference in the response to our queries that mystical or religious connotations so commonly applied to a tiny part of we would not be able to understand it in any event.

NVC. We say that a picture is worth 1,000 words. A color picture is worth It does not take much speculation to recognize the potential revolution-10,000 words. A moving color picture is worth 50,000 words, perhaps, and ary changes in our science and culture if but a part of such technology a talking moving picture is worth a 100,000 or more words in the transmis-were actively introduced and applied in the months and years to come.

sion of information and/or communication.

Any serious consideration of all of the above hinges on one question: How NVC takes a quantum jump beyond a talking moving color picture. It is 72

FAR JOURNEYS

SEGUE

73

direct instant experience and/or immediate knowing transmitted from perceived, and the interpretations and conclusions that I gleaned from the one intelligent energy system and received by another. The content can experience.

Take this starting point, and draw any extrapolation from it, then unbe only a two-digit number, or the actual reliving of an event not a part of derstand the limitations of our semi-intelligent species.

your own life patterns.

NVC implies a control of mental processes so alien to our present Why did we evolve along our particular path so differently from the standards of being that I doubt that there is a single human or group of rest? I like the explanation which attributes it to the very rare characteris-humans on our planet who have mastered the technique. If there are, they tic of the earth environment—we

could see the sun and moon, planets are very quiet about it. On the other hand, if it were the case, they and stars. This presumes that most life-generating and -sustaining planets certainly would have had to develop some type of mental shielding to have thick cloud covers that blot out all of these. Their suns visually are no survive the cacophony of unorganized thinking that is so common here.

more than a haze of light. No more, nothing but blackness at night.

Before man can communicate (and associate) with intelligent species at Our species, able to see the physical universe from the beginning, took all levels of reality, he must become proficient at NVC. I am sure it must the route of astronomy, gravity, electromagnetics, particle theory, quan-bemuse if not amuse other intelligent species when we spend millions for tum mechanics, etc., which we call our sciences.

huge radio telescopes in the attempt to receive electromagnetic signals Lacking this clue of a visible physical universe, other species learned from other intelligent life sources. This is much like another culture mea-NVC.

suring the exhaust gases from our cars or our pollution to perceive commu-If I were proficient at NVC (which I am not), and you asked me what nication via this loose discharge of energy residue. At the other end, was the matter because you detected (unconsciously by NVC) that I had a animals do most of their communication by scents and smell.

problem, I would be able to transmit into your sensory system how

it felt It would be easy to give hundreds of illustrations of attempts to cope to have the sore big toe that I had. You would momentarily have a sore with NVC problems. We have faced them in so many different ways that toe, just as I had, still understanding that it was my big toe that hurt, not we are probably much more aware than the average group or facility. We yours. Thus you would know, far better than by means of any possible still grope with the rudiments of NVC type of training and mental pro-words that I could say, what I was experiencing or feeling or wanted to cessing. The only statement that we can make at this moment is that we communicate.

recognize the existence and the need.

Instead of my wife calling by phone to say that she would be late for From this segue, the material following goes “interstate”—an attempt dinner and that she would arrive at nine o’clock, I would get a picture “in to translate and transpose the NVC perspective into the written word.

my head” of her driving the car with the headlights on, with the number 9

Due to such conversion, the question of validity always will be present.

flashing simultaneously in the picture. She would also show me a picture Some “thought balls” are easier to unravel serially than others; the time-of the right rear tire of the car, flat and being changed by a local state space humanizing is bound to create

distortions. It always has.

trooper. All of this could be transmitted superimposed with a signal of You do the best you can.

warmth and love in the space of perhaps two or three seconds, no more.

If I were proficient at NVC and my son also was trained in the technique, I could pass along to him, in very short order, all of the education and experience that I have gathered that he might desire or that might be of use to him. It would not be the absorption of words simply received in serial form, but an instantaneous, or nearly so, transmission absorption of the entire event—including my emotional reaction, what my five senses

Part II

7. Surveys and

Schematics

The following is a deliberately free translation of nonverbal communication. To compound the rendering, most if not all represents the transposing of non-time-space events and ambience into replicas of conscious human physical experience. Thus a "humanizing" process is used extensively in the retelling—which may increase comprehension and simultaneously reduce accuracy.

To abet the method, a few specific words are utilized in a different context to provide a connotation not so totally unlike their common definition. You can't report "he said" or "he walked" or "she smiled"—because it wasn't that way, the physical equipment wasn't available.

Instead, here are parts of the "replica" vocabulary: **Time-Space Illusion (TSI):** An anomaly among the "standard" energy systems, which includes the entire physical universe **M Band:** Part of energy spectrum commonly used for thought, not electromagnetic, electrical, magnetic, nucleonic, etc. M Band noise is caused by uncontrolled thought.

Ident: Mental name or "address," i.e., energy pattern of item
Rote: Thought ball

A “packet” of thought/mentation, total memory Knowledge

Information

Experience

History

Run the rote: To recall portions of Rote after receipt of total **Percept:** Insight Intuition Understand **Open:** Receptive **78**

FAR JOURNEYS

SURVEYS AND SCHEMATICS

79

Closed: Tune down (or out) external stimuli valid, I would be able to perceive the release from this near-second body. I **Flickered:** Uncertain

found it was very real. I could stay in the second body, hovering near the **CLICK!:** Instantaneous change in consciousness physical, but could move no more than ten or fifteen feet away. It was **Blank:** Don’t understand

reminiscent of my first limited out-of-body activities. It also brought back **Turn in:** Consider, think over

the memory of the many frustrative attempts in those early days to

move **Vibrate**: Show emotion

away farther—and the moment I found the release point. Without being **Smooth:** Get it together, in charge of self aware of the reason, I had provided subsequently to others in training the **Dulled:** Lost interest

key to such release—the mental "security repository box," where one can place thoughts that get in the way.

Lighted: Happy, idea, enthusiasm

Once I had become aware of the actual process, it became automatic, **Rolled:** Amused, laughed

and both separation and return contained these elements—leaving the **Curl:** Organized energy, usually intelligent, local slang second body in "orbit" close to the physical, moving and being entirely **Plied:** The way things are, goes with the territory apart and separate from the physical in a "third" body, or an energy One of the earliest discoveries made in the new mode of Let-Somebody-essence (without form?). I no longer concerned myself with the details.

Else-Do-the-Driving was that I had more than one nonphysical body.

Understanding it functionally—if not the reason—was enough for my Upon return, I began to notice it took a small additional effort to get back purposes.

into the physical. Initially, I assumed this to be nothing more than some Another early result of my new navigator (my total self?) was remem-minor misalignment as I tried to reenter. On one particularly difficult bering the going-to-class format. This came after my usual out-of-body attempt, I pulled back slightly, stopped trying, and examined the problem.

separation process, releasing to such guidance, and without much move-My physical body appeared to be not one, but two—much as when your ment finding myself among a crowd of gray forms. "Crowd" means so vision is slightly impaired by astigmatism. They seemed very close to-many they seemed to fade into the distance. All were focused in one gether, no more than three or four inches apart, one slightly behind and direction, and none seemed to notice my arrival—except one, brighter fainter than the other. I approached the nearest of the two slowly, slid than the others. It approached me and stopped.

into it very easily. I held this position for several moments. It seemed as if It opened—with words! In my consciousness. (Glad you're back, Bob.

I were partially interspersed with the physical, yet not quite in phase. The You've missed quite a few sessions.)

condition had a familiarity that took me all the way back to the vibration I I flickered. (Well, uh, I've been busy.)

first encountered and the physical paralysis that went with it. The sensa-The form focused. (You're different. You haven't been on

drugs or alco-

tion was near-identical—without the panic.

hol, have you?)

From there, it was easy to reenter the physical with a simple twitchlike I opened wide. (I've lost a lot of rote, or I can't pull it out. Where am I?) The form rolled. (I guess you have! You're back at sleeper's class.) movement, akin to a shrug of the shoulders. Thereafter, I began to take I turned inward, and the percept came out bright and clear. Sleeper's particular notice of physical reentry and found that I did indeed reenter a classes—attended by countless humans during a portion of their deep second form just prior to the physical body. In appearance, it was identical sleep, during the sleeping out-of-body period. The only limitation was that to the physical, only less dense. However, upon return this second body such sleep could not be distorted by chemicals, it had to be natural. How appeared more real, the more solid of the two. Upon entering the second, many times I had been here long before I knew it, before I knew anything the actual physical then seemed more definite. Also, I began to observe about OOBEs and the like! I just didn't remember when I woke up, like more closely my separation process, presuming that if the premise were 80

everyone else. If anything leaked through, it was attributed to a dream, constructive choice will be made. If the correct path is taken, obviously no inspiration, idea, or imagination.

problems will exist. If the incorrect selection is made, it will become And I knew my instructor. (Hi, Bill.)

evident. When it does, there is a 50 percent probability that the choice Bill rolled. (Took you long enough. Want me to plug you in?) can be reversed and the constructive path substituted in its place.

I flickered. (Well, I don’t know. You see, I think I am different. I’m not Therefore, there is only one chance in four, at the most, that an irrevo-

asleep.)

cable direction may be taken in decision making. All vital decisions in the Bill blanked slightly, then lighted. (Oh, you’re one of those. How did history of man have been made on much worse odds than three to one.

that happen?)

Some were as high as one in twenty and came out positively.

I plied. (I don’t know. It just did.)

To move away from the null point of indecision, take the position that Bill turned inward, then opened. (That means you don't belong here any action or decision is better than none at all, based upon the odds of anymore. Too bad. You were one of my star pupils.) three to one. To get the process underway without trauma, perform the I flickered. (You're sure about that? About my not belonging?) following:

Bill smoothed. (I've had them before. It doesn't work out. Your type gets impatient, bored. The biz kids, the OOB-ers, busy, busy, busy.) Make up an A list. Place on this list all of your worries, anxieties, and I smoothed carefully. (How about plugging me in one last time? As long concerns about which you can do absolutely nothing. You cannot do any-

as I'm here.)

thing about tomorrow's weather conditions. It will rain, snow, be cold or Bill dulled. (You probably know it already. Can't change the program.) hot, and there is no action you can take to prevent it. If there is absolutely I opened wide. (Try me.)

nothing you can do today about such items, place them on this A list.

Bill flickered and tossed me a rote. I opened it easily.

Make up a B list. Place on this list all of your worries, anxieties, and concerns about which you can do something today, take action, large or CLICK!

small.

Make up a C list. Place on this list all of your needs, hopes, and desires, The anti-ulcer, anxiety-lowering, tension-reduction, get-it-together for-

large or small, which have yet to be fulfilled.

mula:

Today, perform the following functions:

The major underlying cause of human worry relates to the Law of Change. All human conflict relates to this law. Some worry that change 1. Take the A list and destroy it, and in so doing, dismiss all items con will take place, others that it will not. Wars are fought to resist change or tained therein from your consciousness. Why waste your energy worry to accelerate it.

ing about that which you cannot control?

At the individual level, this translates into various forms of indecision.

Fear enters into the pattern, fear of the consequences of any decision or 2. Take the B list and take some action, however small, to begin the action. The pressure builds up, intensifies as the decision is put off, de-resolution of each item contained therein. Several may be concluded layed. The result accumulates toxins in all parts of the human system until immediately and thus can be

released and dismissed from your con there is failure or severe reduction in operating efficiency. Indecision is the sciousness. Others will be reduced in pressure because the flow has killer.

begun, a decision has been made.

Consider the statistics of decision, in general and simplified. In any 3. Take at least one item on the C list and perform one act, large or small, abstract decision, there is a 50 percent probability that the correct or that moves you in the direction of such goal.

82

FAR JOURNEYS

SURVEYS AND SCHEMATICS

83

Perform this entire process each day until you have no A list, no B list, I Bickered. (Uh, yes.)

and all of your energy and consciousness are devoted to items on your C

(Still digging out the secrets of the universe?) list.

This wasn’t what I expected. It definitely wasn’t any near-human cul-You then will complete serenely your human life purpose.

ture, and this being seemed to know me. Some mistake in the ident, but the radiation did seem familiar. I didn't want to ask the obvious, but I had CLICK!

to. (Where am I?)

The figure smoothed. (Outermost ring, Robert. One more final cycle in-

I folded the rote and tucked it in me, turned to Bill. (That's pretty good.

human and that will be it. For me.)

Seems familiar.)

I flickered. (I don't have a percept on the Z-55 ident, but I know you.) Bill plied. (It ought to. You must have picked it up a couple hundred Z-55 rolled. (After all those hours putting music together … The run classes hack.)

to Cuba back in the fifties to record in Havana …) I opened. (Bill, if I don't belong here, where do I go?) The percept came bright and sure in me. Of course I knew him. Even (I don't know. I don't have the slightest percept on that.) then I called him an old soul! I vibrated strongly. (Lou! Sure! The Z-55

(There must be classes for, uh, mavericks like me.) Bill plied. (I'm sure there are. I got to go make my rounds now. Drop in ident threw me. You seem different. It's great to be with you again!) for

a visit if you feel like it. I'm two rings out.) Z-55/LOU smoothed. (Well, I've had a couple more in-human runs I opened wide. (Sure, Bill.)

since we were together, so Lou is sort of covered over a little.) He turned and faded into the host of gray forms, and with nothing I turned inward. Lou, one of the most gentle of persons I had ever met better to pull me, I rotated and dived back for the physical. Reentry was

… musician, arranger, orchestra conductor … quietly living through normal.

his life and his work … hours and days we spent together … work-The next early absorption was a series of demonstrations—live guided ing far into the night developing melody lines … chord progressions, experiences—of the old saw about fools and angels. I cannot conceive of orchestrations … then our paths diverged … and I heard of his early the latter having fear, just selective. As to the former, I had ignorantly death … the diabetes I knew he lived with …

rushed in many times in the early period, so I certainly qualified. I began Z-55/LOU opened. (You're still in-human!)

to call it the Defooling Treatment.

I smoothed. (Yep.)

The presumption I made was that my Greater Self (soul?) always

knew He flickered. (Oh, a sleeper. You got out this far? That's pretty good. Too what it was doing. I had learned from it how a homing device loosely bad you won't remember it.)

called ident was utilized; this was like a signal you could follow to the I opened more. (It's not quite that way, Lou. I, uh, here.) source of that place or being. In this one instance of Defooling, I had I tossed him a short rote covering the out-of-body beginning. He took it rolled out of body in the early morning, and after releasing the second, I in and closed. Then he opened and rolled lightly. (One of those. You never expressed the mild observation that it would be nice to visit a near-human told me.)

culture that was in time-space and that I could understand. Immediately I plied. (I didn't know myself when we were working together.) the ident Z-55 flashed into me, so I reached and stretched. There was a He flickered. (So how do I fit in? You come looking for me. More mu-

slight sense of movement and I was in front of a slightly glowing figure.

sic?)

Other, similar figures were in the background. Beyond, nothing.

The figure opened. (Well, Robert, we meet again.) I plied again. (I'm not sure. I asked to visit a near-human culture, got your ident … and here I am.)

84

FAR JOURNEYS

SURVEYS AND SCHEMATICS

85

Z-55/L OU lig hted. (Y ou wa nt to visit my … uh … hometo wn, so like me or what I was temporarily. No cars, trucks, vehicles of any type.

to speak?)

No utility poles or overhead wires, no sidewalks. It was bright daylight, but I rolled. (Not Kentucky. I've been there. It's too human!) I couldn't find a sun overhead.

He rolled with me. (No, no … my original home. It's just what you As I walked and mingled with the population, people noticed me but want, that's why you got my ident… . It's, uh, different, but you can didn't seem to react as if I were an alien. With each step, I felt more at understand it all right.)

ease and the population seemed more human. Each inhabitant was very I turned inward.

purposeful and closed, as if preoccupied on a job to be done with not If you've never been to a particular exotic place—or to a locale that at much nonsense in the process. If there was any body

language present, no least to you seems exotic and exciting from your distant viewpoint—there percept showed. Point of fact was I couldn’t tell the males from the is much anticipation. You can conjure up any number of possibilities as to females, which was unusual for me, so I assumed there was no such differ-what you will do and experience.

ence.

In your eagerness, you are willing to accept all sorts of limitations, Unable to attract the attention of those moving on the street, I entered restrictions, that seem unimportant from the outside. Also, you forget one one of the buildings and found myself in a large room which greatly most important factor. You take along as hidden extra baggage your own resembled the lobby of a medium-sized hotel. There were people standing enculturation as a comparative tool of measurement.

around, apparently in conversation. I approached a man (?) who appeared Z-55/LOU lighted brightly. (To really get the feel of it, you ought to go to be standing behind a desk. He looked at me expectantly. I knew I there just like a regular tourist, limited amount of assets, and stay through needed a reason.

the regular historical event we, uh, they call the surge.)

“Do you, uh, do you have a restaurant here?” I tried to make it casual, I lighted, too. (Great! Good percept.)

but as he blanked I knew I had done it wrong.

(And so you can truly experience it), he went on, (cut off communication I turned to my rudimentary NVC. (Do you have the means for me to with here until after the surge. A little like the in-human training but recharge?)

without rote erasure.)

The man lighted brightly, waved me off to the right. As I walked in the indicated direction, I felt smug. I had passed one test. They didn't vocalI opened wide. (I'm all for it. How do we start?) ize but they understood me. Even my weak, nonverbal communication.

(I'll be your anchor here. To get back, all you need do is home on my From here on, it would be easy. I began to speculate as to the food they ident.) There was a whimsical radiation mixed in with his pattern. (To get consumed. It was sure to be unusual. An archway, rounded, was in front of there focus in on ident … Zeer-surge …) me, and it appeared dark beyond—no, not dark, just lit differently in a I vibrated. (Zeer surge.)

mixture of colors.

I reached and stretched.

I strode confidently through the archway and into the colors. Just inside, the radiation hit me like a sheet of hot flame and I staggered back.

CLICK!

This wasn't the restaurant, the man got it all wrong. From all sides came the overwhelming attraction of female sexuality, inviting, asking, offering, I was in a city, or what appeared to be a city. There were buildings in all promising—it was too much. With great effort, I backed out through the directions, fairly uniform, none over three or four stories high. They were archway, breathing heavily and trying to calm down. I had just about not particularly attractive or unusual, had openings in the sides that my smoothed out when I looked up and the room clerk (?) was in front of me, percept took as windows and doors. The streets or spaces between build-accompanied by two other men—percept police, authority, KGB, etc.

ings were not unusually wide, but contained only people, percept beings 86

One KGB moved in. (Your ident, please?)

I smoothed at the desk clerk. (Sorry, I didn't know it was a private I began fumbling in my pockets for my wallet, only there were no space.)

pockets in the one-piece cover I was wearing. But there was a belt on me The desk clerk vibrated. (What other kind is there!) with a

small pouch attached to it. I reached in the pouch and there was a I flickered. (You mean all of these buildings are private?) card in it. I pulled it out and it resembled nothing so much as a typical The desk clerk dulled.

credit card. KGB took it from me, examined it carefully, then looked up.

(Then what are all these people doing here? There must be a hundred!) I (From Earth, huh? Never heard of that city. Over on the other side of the hit it strong enough to catch his attention.

ocean?)

(It's their private space, naturally.)

I smoothed. (Why, uh, yes, you see …)

(All one hundred?)

KGB waved the card at me. (Well, we don't particularly like you visiting The desk clerk waved me over to the desk and I followed. He pointed to here, but you got to obey the rules.)

the drawing on the wall behind him. It showed some five rows of large I brightened. (Sure, I understand.)

black dots that looked like holes, twenty to a row.

(Here, we don't go into private space and take without paying first.

Al-

(That's our personal space.) He gestured proudly. (Best in the city.) ways pay first.) KGB turned to the desk clerk, handing him my card. (How I stared at the drawing. (You go into those?) much of it do you want? He hasn't got very much.) He nodded. (Only when the surge takes place. They're this big across the The desk clerk dropped the card into the pouch on his belt. (That ought middle.)

to about cover it.)

He indicated a width of about two feet with his arms. He was about to I started to protest. (But that's all I got, I can't …) continue when there was a sound like thunder in the distance and the (In that case we'II have to flag you.) The second KGB stepped forward floor began to rock. Immediately, everyone in the room turned and hur-and took my hands. (Can't have you walking around upsetting things with-

ried out through exits in the back. The room clerk ran to join them.

out any ident.)

(That's the surge starting up,) he called over his shoulder. (I suppose I flickered. (What are you going to do?)

that's what you came to witness, but you better get to your personal space The second KGB pulled a small flat box out of his pouch and opened it.

fast.)

(Hold still, this won't hurt.)

Then the room was empty and I tried to keep my footing as the floor He took one hand and pressed my fingertips into the box. I thought, heaved rhythmically. I staggered over to the entrance as the roar grew fingerprints, they're taking my fingerprints. But I was wrong. A black dye louder. In the distance and approaching fast was a mighty wave, not water spread quickly up my fingers until it covered my entire hand. As I stared at but in the ground itself, lifting buildings and streets into a tumbling it, bewildered, they stuck the fingers of my other hand into the box and I flotsam hundreds of feet high. Behind the first wave, I could see a second had two black hands. I tried to rub it off, but it had penetrated the skin.

and a third wave, each larger than the first. There may have been more, The first KGB looked at my hands, satisfied. (That ought to do it. At but I didn't have a chance to find out, as the first wave came surging into least the people will see you coming.)

where I was, and the building lifted and tumbled, me in it, bouncing, (And be warned,) the second KGB added. (I'd advise you to go back rolling, twisting, jarring …

home. Not much action for you here, the way you are. No ident to play

… desperately, I tried to focus, ident what? ident … ident Z-55/

with.)

LOU … Z-55/LOU … reach and stretch, reach and stretch …

The first KGB looked at me hard. (We'll be keeping an eye on you.) closed tightly … tightly …

Then the two turned and walked across the room and out into the street.

FAR JOURNEYS

SURVEYS AND SCHEMATICS

89

CLICK!

among the others in the pile, searching, trying to do something … but never achieving satisfaction.

It was quiet, the pounding had stopped. I tried to keep from shaking Three perceptive shocks hit me simultaneously. The forms were not long enough to open. I finally made it. I was in front of Z-55/LOU, and I worms, they were human! Second, the incredible, staggering radiation of got a percept of his polite expectation.

sexuality, both male and female, that emanated from the seething mass.

I smoothed somewhat. (That's home for you? Where you were before Third, they all were physically dead. I wanted to turn and run, but some other part of me held me in place. I finally calmed down enough to starting human?)

become analytical. Did I want to join in? My whole being shuddered in He plied. (It's not Kentucky.)

rejection. No vestige remained of the sexual drive I found so important (And you're going back there?)

moments before. I had the strong percept that it would come again, but Z-55/LOU opened wide. He glowed very brightly, almost white. (No, never where it would control wholly what I thought or did.

not there.)

With this flash of knowing, another emotion washed through me—

There was a sudden urgent signal to go back, and before I could reply, I intense compassion for those trapped in the undulating mass, so focused moved away automatically and he faded… . I was back hovering over and intent on seeking sexual satisfaction they were unaware of any other the physical, the return signal still strong. I slid into the second, then the existence—anger at a system that could so inhibit, repress, and distort as physical, and sat up on the water bed. Body fine, no full bladder. No to create the situation in front of me. Were these the castoffs of the signal. What called me back? Nothing I could find.

human process, to remain so throughout eternity?

The Defooling Treatment. They do rush in.

I moved forward slowly and stopped close to the edge of the pile. The Releasing to my total self for direction and purpose provided what I moving bodies were male and female, of all shapes and sizes, glistening now recognize as a crash program in comprehension of what I had for-with wetness. A bare hairy leg thrust momentarily from the pile, and I merly labeled Locale II. It began with hard basics at the inner end of the grabbed it by the foot and pulled… . The leg pushed out blindly, trying spectrum, with a modified hands-on process that forced inescapable conto move more deeply back into the pulsating mass. I pulled harder, trying clusions. Simply put, I could observe but not participate. The purpose, I to keep my grip on the sweat-covered ankle. Slowly, I was able to pull the discovered, was multifaceted and determined in part long after the event rest of the body clear of the pile. It was a man, small in stature, dark-itself.

haired, fine-featured, of indeterminate age. He lay there on his belly, his One of the principal examples came one night when I rolled out of the arms and legs moving crablike, attempting to pull himself back into the physical, and before I could release from the second body, an overwhelm-pile, totally oblivious to the fact that I was holding on to his foot and ing drive for sexual union rose in me. I was about to employ my usual not-preventing him from doing so.

now-but-later cooling technique when I moved away sharply with

a sud-I easily held him in place, bent over, and shouted in his ear, (Hey, I want den shift. The movement was fast and short. When I was able to perceive, to talk to you. Hold still for a moment!)

I found I was standing a few feet away from an enormous pile of writhing There was not the slightest indication that he heard me. His face was forms. It reached up, slanting back as high as I could see. In each direc-fixed, a gleam of anticipation spread across it. He kept trying to move back and I held him in place, wondering what to do next.

tion, right and left, it swept off into the distance. It reminded me of I tried another approach. (It's the cops, the police, they're raiding the nothing so much as the interweaving of huge fishing worms in the bottom joint! Gotta get out!)

of a can after being left there overnight. The motion was continuous, I waited for some response, but there was none. I couldn't provide him thousands upon thousands, each wet slippery form wiggling in and out 90

with the radiation that would get his attention. I released his foot, and he crawled back into the mass and was swallowed up in the movement. I Point

turned away sadly and stretched for my physical ident, and

returned without incident.

From that point on, I had a new technique to control any surfacing sexual drive. All I need do is think of that wriggling, writhing, mindless pile of humanity. That does it.

The suspicion began where I thought I had a good perspective of the This episode was of the milder variety that may be encountered in the human experience. In retrospect, the whole thing may have been planned immediate postphysical areas. I soon discovered there was a pattern at that way all along.

work in my own guided tour through them—states of being I had previ-I had been moving in and out of OOB situations very blithely and ously passed through quickly to avoid confrontation. All of these forays calmly, always sure that my guiding total self knew the answers, would started while in the second body, before I could release it and move take care of anything and any problem as they arose. It had worked per-outward. I felt safe and secure with my higher self doing the driving.

fectly to date, and perhaps that was why the slight scent of suspicion The feeling was right. But not the reason.

began to form. However great my ego might think I was, I knew I wasn't that good.

Thus entered again one of my many questionable characteristics. I can't let a good thing alone and simply let it do; I have to find out why. In several succeeding OOB excursions, I tried to become

aware of who was doing the driving and/or navigating. The contact was elusive in the beginning, no percept other than a gentle presence behind me, directing where I went. I turned around, but there was nothing—at the most a trace of a friendly presence. But it was there and it seemed definitely external.

I went back through my notes, all the way to the beginning. I was astounded that I had ignored what was so apparent. A hand helping me get out, a hand on my arm, a response to my anguished screams, and the more subtle clues apparent from my new perspective. I had called them helpers at the time and let it go at that. At the minimum, I had not turned my activities over to my "greater self," but to them, whoever

"they" were.

Thereafter, during active OOBEs, I tried many times to communicate with these presences, singular or plural, to no avail. Correction: I thought 1 received no reply because no words were forthcoming, only pictures, sensations, and action. The change came about when I dimly began to realize I wasn't speaking their "language," as it were. Review of my early notes supported this, for the most part. Words and language, as we know 92

them, are strictly human. The inference was obvious to me—being hu-the air crew up front—perhaps I know too much. However, I have to get man. My deflated ego rose somewhat with the realization that whatever from here to there physically in a short time, so I fasten the seat belt and my communication method was, a response was coming from these—fly the airplane with nothing but anxiety and muscle twitches. Sleep is rconhumans?

unthinkable.

With this awareness, I continued to ask and let “them” do the driving This was different. They knew how and where to fly this airplane over and navigating during my OOB states for one simple reason: the process this route far better than I. With each “flight,” my confidence and trust had been working. Whoever they were, they certainly knew the territory in them grew. Conversely, I realized how little I knew as the route became far better than I. Each time, though, I attempted another kind of commu-more complicated. I fondly began to call them INSPECS—short for “intelli-nication, and it began getting results. I directed wordless thoughts—pic-gent species,” which presumes humans are not quite so.

tures, activities, feelings, and emotions to the supposed presence behind Knowing of such assistance and help, I approached my visits into the me. Each time, there was an immediate response of like quality. It took cycling rings in near-earth environs with much more confidence and con-some analytical and subjective attitudes combined to comprehend what I sciousness than before. I felt an absolute security. If I got in beyond my received. It was painfully

slow on my side, astoundingly patient on theirs.

depth, THEY would pull me out to safety—although I found that their Out of it came the rudiments of what we now call nonverbal communica-concept of beyond my depth and mine differed somewhat. I may have tion (NVC). It was a milestone in my consciousness. I knew then that believed that I was going down for the third and last time, screaming for NVC exists and I knew the difference. Not too much more.

With the mutual recognition of such communication, the depth and help, yet THEY waited until the eighth or ninth time before calmly ex-extent of my OOB patterns shifted. I was escorted frequently to what tending a hand. All part of a learning process with built-in intensity.

might be loosely described as another kind of class, in that there was an A favorite quick and learn-forever method of theirs was simulation. It instructor and there were students, including me. It was entirely different was based on their ability to create and place into a human consciousness from the sleeper's classes I remembered. Here, freely translated, there was

—mine—an earth-type situation so real and so overwhelming that I could a brilliant white, radiating ball of light that was the teacher. I could detect not tell reality from illusion. I don't know the limits of such simulation radiation of others—presumed students—all around me, but nothing be-talent/technology. Nor do I know the extent to which they employ the yond that, no form or any indicators as to who and what the others were.

technique. It may be only in my own particular case, but I doubt it. The Instruction consisted of a seeming sequential bombardment of packages of potentials of its application in other ways begs for broad speculation.

total experiential information to be absorbed instantly and stored thought In my own pattern, it was usually applied as in instant cleanup of minor balls, whose actual name cannot be translated into a word, which I called emotional patterns that blocked or distorted my clarity of perception or rotes. It apparently is a very common communication technique in NVC.

my stability. Usually I was unaware of such dysfunction. THEY would note What I could bring back, I attempted to convert into in-human usage, it and offer to take care of the problem. I would be informed that the with mixed results. I have been unable to relate the vast majority of such lesson was about to take place with my consent, yet once into the simula-information in any way to life here on time-space earth. It may be preparation, it became absolutely and totally real—and I lived it. Most of them tion for activity yet to take place here, for use in other nonphysical energy were short, single events that were the peak decision-making points under systems, or it is beyond my comprehension. The last is most likely.

very adverse circumstances. The vital part—the lesson to be learned indel-Thus the relationship took on an entirely new aspect. I began to trust ibly—was my constructive and reasoned resolution of the problem. If I did my unseen pilot(s?) as I never would have trusted myself. For example, in not come up with the desired

action, the simulation would be repeated flying as a passenger on a commercial airliner, I never can trust completely until I did. Even in the repetition, I couldn't break through the reality of 94

the simulation. Yet once the training sequence was completed, I then

… then I began to cool down until I was no longer uncomfortable, and knew it for what it was.

I could tolerate the brightness.

An interesting sidelight arose when our laboratory Explorers met and (Is that better for you?)

associated with intelligent beings who did accommodate to the use of

"Better" was an understatement. Much longer, and I would have words, some of whom closely resembled my percepts of the INSPECS. Fur-melted.

ther, they greeted me with familiarity and I felt the same toward them.

(Did you bump your head?)

I had never asked the INSPECS exactly what their role was in the human Well, I guess I could call it that. Usually my head was out front earth pattern. I assumed THEY were simply a graduate school version of when …

the ex-human helpers from the outer rings. Their mode of operation and (It is nothing to be concerned about. You have a hard head, Mister purpose seemed very similar, except that the

Monroe.)

INSPECS had knowledge and

technology far beyond that drawn from the human experience. The fact That turned me around. I never thought of God having a whimsical that

sense of humor. That and the Mister Monroe routine. I straightened, no THEY seemed to be independent of the recycling rings supported this longer cowering. I almost felt like reaching out and shaking hands in belief. To pose questions about motives seemed—irreverent. Or perhaps I greeting.

didn't want to endanger the good thing I had going for me. Thus I had no (There are more significant and suitable ways.) direct and conscious communication with them while in the OOB state.

I was getting bewildered. I was just floating there, trying to figure

out But we fools can’t let it alone. On a particular night, I had an idea and I what happened …

decided to try it out. I had been developing a sense of familiarity with the (You encountered a condition similar to that which your scientists call a radiation of the INSPECS and thought I could home in on the signal—the standing wave, where two like energies in phase appear to cancel one an-

ident—just as I could others. I might learn much. Here is the event, as other to zero. Yet there is no zero, as energy does not cancel, it transforms taken from my notes and expanded to a semblance of understanding: into other dynamic states.)

Time: 2:17 A.M.… . bedroom … After two sleep cycles, awake, So now I supposedly knew what happened. But that didn’t explain rested, relaxed … went through unhook rollout method into second where I was. If I asked …

body, rolled out of second, and this time I did have a percept of the ident (“Where” is a relative term. The most reasonable explanation from your INSPEC … not much, but enough, I thought … homing on the ident perspective is that you are just outside the portal, the gate to our reality, a

… went through normal reach and stretch procedure … moved rap-

conversion point. The ident you used brought you here.) idly through ring system … and beyond, which did not surprise me

Well! There are gates to heaven, after all. I guess they could be con-

… began to feel warm, more so as I went until it became almost too strued as golden and/or pearly, if you thought heaven was beyond.

uncomfortable and was at the point of turning back … when I rammed (You are correct in your assumption. It is all from within the observer.) headlong into something and collapsed, shaken … I reached out and The percept finally came out. The communication was so natural and there was a barrier, smooth in texture, rigid, impenetrable … still very so rapid that I had missed it completely. There I was, casually talking—uncomfortable from the heat, I pulled myself together, knowing this was correction: communicating with this wonderfully glowing being just as I the end of the line, I might as well turn back to the physical … and a would a new friend. He/It was answering my questions before I asked bright light, very intense, glowed in front of me, first ovate, reshaping into them, so I must be using NVC better than I realized–no point in holding a tall humanoid form, so bright I cringed from it … for what seemed back any part of me, even if I wanted to. Whatever I was, It was reading an eternity, I shrank back, trying to shield myself from the brightness every thought I had anyway. I opened wide, all of what I was.

(That is not necessary, Mister Monroe.)

this point. The in-human experience is merely an addition to what you are.

And I immediately knew why. It/THEY had been a part of the process.

However, it is an important addition.)

My concept of an external intelligent energy source, helping, navigating, I tried to sort out what was so important in being human that it doing the driving, was accurate.

would …

(With your present need for individuation, yes.) (How do you state it? A drop of water in an ocean cannot understand the The question arose automatically: How long had this been going on? I seas or the wave that casts it up on a sandy beach.) Wait a minute! That came out very human. Maybe

had become aware of it only recently, and had traced it back to the THEY are only

superhuman graduates, after all.

beginning of my OOB activity, but how about before then? Have they (Some of us have passed through the in-human. I was selected because I always been …

am one of those few.)

(You will become aware of such reality at an appropriate point.) Few … I wonder how many are few. Five, ten, a thousand …

All I could be sure of was my own direct experience, but they must (It is difficult to assess due to the melding. More than the current in-

communicate with other people …

physical human population, perhaps one hundred times as many.) (With very many by different methods, very few as we are functioning at That would imply THEY have been involved since the very beginning of this point.)

human life.

I knew that was the best I would get, but I wondered about the It/

(That is correct. Before that, we are, just as you.) THEY.

And if several hundred billion are just a few, that must mean the total (We are many, and you have known many of us.) of THEM must be big numbers …

So THEY would be correct … I hoped they didn't mind the INSPECS

(We do not count the parts of the whole. It is not necessary.) label. Now, it seemed inadequate.

If there are that many parts of the whole, then there must be other (It will serve nicely at this point, as well as any other.) important ways to learn, other non-earth human systems …

I wondered if THEY were the same as those we had met in the lab with (No other precisely as you have found in-human physical earth. There are the various Explorers …

many other consciousness growth centers or schools, as you call them, (In some instances, but not all.)

throughout what you know as the physical universe.) So many questions, and now was my big opportunity …

I could bet that they participate in all of them. They would have to (There will be others.)

if …

The first question, the first, what should be the first? … Are THEY

(A very safe bet, Mister Monroe.)

God or … ?

This was becoming an event not anything like what I expected. I was (We are created and we create, just as you. If God and creator are rapidly losing my sense of awe. It was replaced with a great feeling of identical, then you are God to that which you create.) warmth, of understanding, much on the order of old deep friendships, yet I couldn't help the next one, even if it killed me. I had to know. Did filled with intense respect, not the usual pattern of expected angels, if that is what THEY were.

T H E Y . . . ?

(We can quickly grow some wings if you wish.) (It will not kill, as you put it, nor will it harm you. You are prepared for No, no, please, no wings. No halos either, although I got the clear an answer by your very presence here, your curiosity, as you call it The percept, staring at my INSPEC—friend? …

essence that is you and others in the human process was not our creation.

(At least that, for now.)

As we, you exist before time-space human earth pattern, just as you do at 98

I could understand how humans with limited but definite momentary tried to ignore it. What I was doing was much too important to be inter-superconscious vision could add a halo to make the human-formed INSPEC

rupted. I wanted to concentrate on my next thought-question, but the stand out as different. A brightly radiant form? How often in human signal got in the way. I turned to dismiss it, and realized it was a need to history has such perception taken place? Miracle workers, saints, local return to my physical body … Of course, my physical body! I had to go medicine men, and last-timers on their final run, no doubt.

back, but I didn't want to, the chance might never come again …

(No doubt at all.)

(We can meet often at this point. We understand your need. A stronger I wanted to be very careful about this, that I had at least a faint compre-

ident homing signal will be provided that you can do so.) hension, that I got it as specifically and accurately as I possibly could.

The radiation was warm, understanding friendship and much more, and They, INSPECS, were in existence before humans ever came into being, I gratefully responded, and reached for the ident of my physical body and several million years ago at the minimum.

stretched. The feeling of movement back seemed short, and I

automati-

(By your time measurement, that is correct. As were you and all other cally slipped into the second, then into the physical. By habit, I looked at energies that are now or have been in-human, if you use this perspective.) the clock. 2:23 A.M. Only six minutes? By comparison, the problem that Could that infer we as humans, the nonphysical energy part of us, called me back was frustratingly minuscule. My thoughts were filled with actually are INSPECS and we don’t know it?

the dazzling import of those six minutes as I got out of bed and went to (As we understand it, you are created by the same source.) the bathroom to empty my bladder.

But we humans are not the same.

I slept very little, if at all, the rest of the night.

(It is difficult to express in your terms. Consider the structure of physical During the next several weeks, the press of daily physical activity plus matter as various forms. Moving inward, you have named subconstructs as the eagerness and excitement in my anticipation kept me from another atoms. These in turn have many organizations of particles that result in meeting. I had difficulty in getting into the required pre-sleep. However distinctive patterns. Your scientists have begun to understand the energy carefully I approached the OOB release point after I did get relaxed, I relationship of these particles. They have begun to perceive the spinning of couldn’t get into the OOB state. After repeated effort, I

did no more than the particle itself. It is the creative force that produces such spinning which fall asleep. I realized I was forcing it too strongly, but it was hard to we have in common.)

control. Finally, I gave up trying for the moment—and it happened easily.

Which could mean vast differences if I work outward through the struc-

Time: 4:45 A.M.… . awake and rested, although far past my usual ture from that base. Differences so profound there could be no point of cycle, I went into the unhook rollout, and moved easily into the second reconciliation, even similarity.

body state … moving out of the second was easy, and I reached for an (You are presuming a complexity which in our reality is very direct and ident to home in to … It was there! I held back my excitement, stayed simple. It is the distortion of time-space illusion that causes this in your calm … reached and stretched, following the signal. The feeling of consciousness.)

movement was short and quick and I stopped. Before me was the shining I would have to try again. There must be some ongoing relationship form. Several others were behind it. Trying to remain calm and casual, I between such INSPECS and humans, else why would they bother with us?

focused on the radiation that had been so distressing before. Now it was For some reason, they need us, we need them, they have

been involved very tolerable—or I was getting used to it.

with human existence since we began. I'm drawing a blank.

(A little of both, Mister Monroe. We did modify it somewhat for you.) (All of your percepts are correct within certain limits.) I had gone over many times how I would resume our communication, I began to receive a discomforting signal to take care of something back the questions I would ask, the order of priority in case the pattern was there … Back where? Where? The signal, annoying, persisted, and I going to be broken off again suddenly. And the first one, the first one …

(Your interest lay in our relationship with those in human experience (We did not create time-space as you know it, nor the physical earth, nor prior to your departure to …)

the human process, nor the energy flow itself. That is not our department, To go to the bathroom! What an incongruity! Well, this time I made as you put it. Our concern is the output and the … quality of such. To absolutely sure it wouldn't happen, no coffee, very little liquids …

this end, we adjust the internal flow as needed.) (Cause and effect, in which you place such great belief.) I would have to let that one pass by, too. Try to keep from any devia-Belief relief! That's a good one, I'll have to remember it. But the other tion …

ones behind my friend, I don't remember their …

(You will learn of the basic or original design.) (As you have noted, there are others of us also here at this point. They The greatest of virtues, patience …

have been present throughout our meeting. It is your ability to perceive that (You are intended to walk before you fly, as you put it. Those who fly first has changed. They are, how do you call it? … interested … "curious"

must reach back and remember they have already learned to walk. This was is a better definition, which you understand very well.) necessary for you.)

I'm sure I'll need all the help I can get. Here I am, consulting with a Now came the first of the high hard ones. Why me? Why did I learn to being or beings whose penetration into human life activity has been interfly first?

preted to be God, gods, angels, the devil …

(It was not our intent. Certain … adjustments had to be made.) (You had the latent capability to perform an important function of a very Now it is UFOs and flying saucers, which is more in

keeping with minor nature at this point in the development of human consciousness.) current cultural concepts.

What possible capability could that be! What function! It must be so (You would have lost that bet, Mister Monroe. Such are manifestations minor I can't perceive it.

of another pattern, of which you will soon become aware.) (You need but examine yourself, as you and only you know what you are.

I'd better let that one stay where it is and stick to the main point. Why As to function, you are performing it very well, as expected.) adjustments, whatever that means?

With a little help now and then, I hope, whatever the function is …

(Because free will is such a vital part of the human learning experience, Can't pull it all together instantly, have to sort it out … even to the deviations from the design are frequent and predicted, as you would express beginning of my flying. Did they help on that one?

it. Such adjustments are no more than … the exact term is not there (You were given some assistance. One facet of your capability was the

… fine-tuning, yes. Fine-tuning.)

actual instigator. It should be obvious to you. It directs your

actions so I got a percept of an immense machine … infinitely complex and frequently you have become conscious of it.)

complicated … with INSPECS climbing all over it, in and out of it, turn-The percept flared instantly. I always felt the trait was of dubious qualing a knob here, a valve there, taking off a filter and cleaning it, matching ity. It always created more problems than solutions. Curiosity.

waveforms on an oscilloscope, checking materials-input flow … Flow!

(That is correct.)

That was it! Their concern was the flow of energy through the human And the old saying, curiosity killed …

experience. The idea of a machine wiped away completely and there was (A different species. It may kill cats on occasion. You are alive in many the physical earth with the human energy rings encircling it, dreamlike in forms.)

its quality . . .

Now, if I could just get a percept on this function business, I might be (Your last percept indicates good progress.)

able to perform more eEciently.

But if they created the process in the first place, they should have

been aware that it would need … maintenance, modification.

(We will attempt to bring you into an awareness of the totality of which your function is but a part, in other meetings. Until that is accomplished, 102

FAR JOURNEYS

CONTACT POINT

103

you are unable to obtain a clear percept or any rote you receive will distort draw the inference that you need to focus on your physical manifestation the function you are performing.)

until the point that it is present.)

I held on to the promise of that statement, feeling very humble and In other words, if it comes, play time is over, now back to work.

inadequate … and astounded that I remained as calm as I had in the (There are certain patterns you must undergo before you proceed. We will face of the encounter that was taking place … the effrontery of my be with you through them, but not in your physical consciousness. We have probing, the extent of my ignorance … Their radiant response to these prepared an exercise for you that may help you through such experiences.

flickers of thought was so profound that I nearly broke down and

lost Do you wish to use it?)

control, no patronizing, no compassion, no feeling of superiority … but I had a percept of the kind of exercise, but not its content, and knew beyond friendship, beyond brotherhood, beyond father-mother-parent, be-that it would be rough. If THEY say it will help, of course I wish it.

yond endearment, beyond words … If they had told me they were my God-

(Turn inward and close tightly.)

creator, I would have settled for that.

(But we are not, Mister Monroe.)

CLICK!

They even knew how to pull me together, the Mister Monroe stuff. If I had been physical, I would have laughed uproariously in relief. Or: Thank I am flying a single-engine Navion over a large city. Bill is in the seat you, I needed that!

beside me. We are about two thousand feet up, and we are just below the (We have another name for you. We can use that if you wish.) overcast. Turbulence is minor. Gauges look good. It's a borrowed aircraft.

I was happy to leave it the way it was, for the moment. There was

I need to keep an appointment in the city below.

nothing formal or reserved the way they used their ident for me. But I Bill leans and yells in my ear, (You're going to have to land now if you wondered how it started.

want to be on time!)

(One of us began to use it in a meeting in your work area … yes, I look around. (I don't see the airport.)

laboratory. Thereafter we applied this ident to you among all of us.) (Never mind the airport.) Bill points downward. (You have to land now.

I knew instantly which one, and it came as no surprise. I wished that Down there!)

they would give him my greetings.

I nod, nose the Navion down, throttle back, low pitch, gear down, three (We have done so.)

in the green, gentle spiral, trying to decide where to set it down … the But the problem, the basic question still remains unanswered. If I don't street, full of cars … there's a wide, flat roof, I turn to look at Bill for know where I'm going, what I am supposed to do, I might go in the wrong approval, but he's gone! Gone! I look back quickly, I'm below one thou-direction again. I know I already have done this several times …

sand, airspeed seventy, 500 down. Have to decide fast, opt for the roof, at (We will help you become much more aware very soon in terms of your least if I get it stopped I won't kill anybody else, while in the street …

time. There is a facet of your particular process that must be accomplished line up the roof, full flaps, nose over steeply … drop her in right on the first. It is all coming together rapidly. The time, as you put it, is growing edge of the roof . . . stall warning yelling its head off … chop throt-

short.)

tle, switches off … let her drop out, drop out . . . she's down, brakes, With their perspective of time, that could mean a million years. By that-stand on them … other edge coming up fast, now slow, she's going to time, I'll be long gone, and humans, too.

make it, she's down and stopped! I sigh and stop shaking. It's hot and I (We refer to the span within your present physical life. So that your open the canopy and climb down to the roof. I stand there looking at the awareness can be accelerated, we recommend that you use only the ident Navion, it's all in one piece, not a scratch. All I have to do is find the homing signal, as you describe it, that we provide. If it is not there, you may stairway down and I'll be on time for my appointment. But how will I get FAR JOURNEYS

the Navion back to its owner! It will never be able to take off a 200-CLICK!

foot roof. Have to remove the wings, lower it to the street by a crane, what a stupid decision, why did I have to …

RESET.

CLICK!

CLICK!

RESET.

… It's a borrowed aircraft. I need to keep an appointment in the city below.

CLICK!

Bill leans and yells in my ear, (You're going to have to land now if you want to be on time!)

… the street or the roof … the street, cars will see me coming in I look around. (I don't see the airport!)

and clear a path down the middle … full flaps … nose down …

(Never mind the airport.) Bill points downward. (You have to land now.

watch that taller building … that's it right over the street, straight Down there!)

down the middle … watch for turbulence, crosswinds at the corner I laugh, swing the yoke over in front of Bill, clip the parachute harness

… flare out, hold her off … get out of the way, get out of the way, across my chest. Then I unsnap my seat belt, open the canopy.

can't you see me! … stall warning yelling … she's quitting on me, (You fly it home,) I yell as I jump far enough to clear the tail assembly, too quick … flash of light, heat, terrible heat.

pull the D ring, feel the jerk of the chute opening, and start to float down.

CLICK!

CLICK!

RESET.

RESET.

CLICK!

CLICK!

… I am flying a single-engine Navion over a large city. Bill is in the (… Thanks for the offer of a loan of your Navion, but that's playing it seat beside me. We are about two thousand feet up, and we are just below too tight, couldn't possibly make it on time, so I called and put off the the overcast. Turbulence is minor. Gauges look good. It's a borrowed appointment …)

aircraft. I need to keep an appointment in the city below.

Bill leans and yells in my ear, (You're going to have to land now if you CLICK!

want to be on time.)

I look around. (I don't see the airport.)

The haze was very thick and Bill was beside me. He was rolling lightly.

(Never mind the airport.) Bill points downward. (You have to land now.

(It took you long enough!)

Down there!)

I blanked, then rolled with him. (You certainly weren't any help!) (Not this kid!), I yell back. (The appointment will have to wait. If

it costs He smoothed. (Use it in good health.) I spun a little. (Where's, me the deal, so be it. Now, where's the airport?) uh …)

(I got the assignment. You better go back now. You have many things to 9. Rainbow

put together.)

Route

I plied. (I guess so. See you.)

I turned, dove inward, ident physical body, and reentered without incident. I sat up in bed, then got up, put on a bathrobe, and went out on the deck. It was a clear night, quiet and warm. I was still unsure as to how or why it happened, but I had no doubt as to the reality of the experience. If I encountered it and knew it, how many more thousands of human beings At this point, I began to accept my new role, whatever it was, and no living right at this time-point on earth also have gone through the same or longer pushed hard for further adventures or activities in the other energy similar pattern? If they have, to whom would they tell it? And the other systems I knew to exist. I did realize that in my sleep state much was training centers on planets circling those billions of stars, tied to us by an taking place which affected my conscious thought and action. I made no intelligent energy field common to

all of us. Were they as unaware as we?

effort to investigate this, believing that it would take care of itself and was I felt very small, looking at the stars—and beyond. But not alone. Never supportive of the course I was following. If I had resumed the sleeper's alone.

classes, hopefully I was applying what I learned in my daily life.

Spaced through several years of time were periodic meetings-instruction sessions with the INSPEC. I still used this ident because I knew of no other appropriate one that was not tainted with cultural-philosophical connotations. The most recent INSPEC event precipitated the gathering of all of my notes on the interim adventures, and the pieces filled in the mosaic.

The following is no more than a survey of the salient or critical parts of the sequence. In the interests of brevity and a feeling of get-to-the-pointism, the usual preamble and closure as to going OOB and returning to the physical are omitted except when highly relevant. Each of the following events began at the point in non-time-space near the edge of INSPEC

"territory," with at least one of them present.

CLICK!

If I have a desire, curiosity—no, more than curiosity—it would be to know, not believe, but know what is beyond this point … where THEY

are …

(It is a question of remembering. As you are at this point, you cannot—

the word? — tolerate a visit among us. We can prepare you for it, if that is your wish. The preparation is not simple.)

108

FAR JOURNEYS

RAINBOW ROUTE

109

When THEY state it's not simple, I knew it was an understatement from these, and all the rest that I know? I am astounded that I could forget!

my perspective. But it was what I wanted … yes!

… forget, forget … I'm getting wet, it's raining hard … I'm get-

(We will make the adjustments necessary in your space-time belief. The ting muddy … that big bang was thunder, hurt my ears, but I can hear, perception must be yours alone.)

and I can move … I feel but I don't hurt, so I guess I'm all right . . .

got to get my bike up on the porch and get a rag and wipe the water and CLICK!

mud off …

… I am playing out in the front yard, riding my tricycle on and off CLICK!

the sidewalk and into the grass … the sun has gone out behind a cloud but it hasn't started to rain … I think if it gets dark, I can light the Now I remember! I was very young, playing out in front of the house candle in my tin-can headlight, but I'll have to go in the kitchen to get before a thunderstorm … the lightning hit a power pole near the some matches … when I get bigger, I'm going to have me a blue car street, not me, my father told me … the concussion or something that goes AAAAARRRRR, AAAAARRRRR … then I'm going to stunned me … and he carried me up to the front porch. I was all right have an airplane, that's what I want most, an airplane, so I can fly up in a few minutes … but the rest of it, I had forgotten completely, even through that dark cloud, up where the sun is shining behind it, then I now I just remember the knowing, not the details …

could go up and dive through the cloud, WHEEEOOO, WHEEEOOO

(A glimpse of who you are before you undertake the human experience.

… oh shoot, it's starting to rain, I'll have to go in the house, just

one How it took place is not important Such momentary recall occurs fre-

more circle in the yard … I have my airplane, WHEEEOOO, quently during the physical process but is obscured and discarded amid the WHEEEOOO … big flash of light … white light, lightning! …

more immediate consistent impact of physical information input. Yet the bang! . . . I am off my tricycle … in the grass, grass is wet, got to get event is retained, below the surface of consciousness, and therefore affects up and get in the house, get my tricycle on the porch so it won't get wet your subsequent action. It is significant that thenceforth you did not fear

… but I can't move, I can't move, what's the matter? … it's dark, I lightning and thunder, as you call it, but found pleasure in such manifesta-

can't see … can't feel anything … I'm not hurt, I don't hurt any-

tion. This is one effect of such pre-human recall brought near your physical where but I can't see, can't get my face out of the grass, got to get up, my conscious level. Another, more cogent, was the subtle alteration in your bike will get wet and it will rust, got to get it on the porch … but I physical life process that led you unknowingly to your present state.) can't move, I can't move! … what? … what? … just beeloon it I hope that doesn't mean that everyone has to get almost struck by and I can go the porch, how could I forget that! How could I forget to lightning to begin to

wake up. It wouldn't be a very popular method …

beeloon! What would make me forget something so basic! Yes! Beeloon, (Most such events are so gentle as to remain unnoticed. Yet they are there can do it without thinking how, anybody can beeloon! And … yes!

if recall is necessary. We have another episode for you, if you desire it.) Three-way … I could do a three-way and it wouldn't be dark …

How could I forget these things! . . . Yes, yes.

why, any curl can do a three-way without turning, you need to three-way if (Here is another area of your perception that is a part of the emergence you want to keep your spiral going, what happened to me that I would you have long forgotten. It is completely your own. We do no more than forget such a simple thing as that! … I could pull a skip and . . . skip?

assist you in your recall.)

Skip! And there's more, it's all coming back, I remember it all and those important fundamentals that I never thought about forgetting because it was impossible, it is as basic as who you are, how is it possible that I forgot 110

CLICK!

than what I just felt … and I feel it rising again and I don't think I could stand it if it was any stronger, but there it is getting bigger and

… I want to hear the music … I want to hear the special music stronger, the good, good, good tingle and the rain roar and the hurt so

… I know how to make the Victrola play the music because I learned hard, coming right up to my head, terrible, terrible sharp hurt … this is how, I learned how just from watching, and then she watched me show so good and so hurting there can't ever be anything that feels so good and her how I could play it, then she said I could play it but I had to be real hurts so much, never never … then it starts to go away and I know that careful so I don't break the records … so I'm not being bad if I play it I will always remember this bright, bright good and the big, big hurt and

… I pull the chair over close to the Victrola so I can stand on it and put nothing will ever be as good or hurt so much … but there it comes the record in the top … I have to lift up the heavy lid, but I do it . . .

again, no, no! … I can't stand it again, I can't, I can't! The good makes I turn the shiny crank in the side, more and more until it won't crank any me cry, it's so good, and the hurt makes me cry, it

hurts so much, it can't more, but I don't crank it after that because it might break the spring be more than the one before, it was the biggest there is, it can't be any

… then I open the front doors of the Victrola, and there is my special bigger, the good and the hurt … but it is, and I scream with joy and music record on the first shelf just where I left it … pull the record out pain and I know this is the greatest of all there is, the exquisite joy, beauty, and be real careful to don't break it, and put it up on top. Then I climb up that transcends any thought or consciousness … that the pain is merely on the chair. I pull the paper cover off the record and put the record on the anguish of physical structure attempting to contain energy beyond the the wheel … then I put the shiny fat arm part with the sharp needle in ability to do so, that one day I will experience it again without the pain it down real careful on the edge of the black record … now everything because I will understand better, one day it will take place, the great glory is ready … I move the little shiny finger and the wheel with the black of … I feel hands picking me up and I am crying a little, not too much, record on it starts moving, and I hurry down off the chair to where the and I open my eyes and raise my head. The music in the Victrola has music is … the music starts coming out of the Victrola and I feel real stopped and she, my mother, is looking at me and saying something …

quiet, so I close my eyes … it is blank for a long time as I listen to the music, but then I feel a surge way down at the bottom of me, and it feels CLICK!

like tingling when my foot goes to sleep, but it doesn't hurt, it feels

good, and with it I hear raining, just like rain on the roof, but it comes and goes

… Yes, yes, I remember what a great privilege I felt it was to have

… and the music gets so soft I can't hear it anymore … then it's been given permission to play the Victrola, and I proudly never broke a quiet and I can't hear or feel anything … there it is again, coming up single record … symphonies, operas my mother liked, plus some saxo-from the bottom of me more, the tingle and the rain surge, and it feels phone jazz records the college student who roomed upstairs gave me, better than anything I ever felt … and I wait for it to happen again which I played when no one was listening but me … and I remember

… here it comes again, stronger and bigger, and it feels so good it starts the same sequence when going under anesthesia before surgery, the identi-to hurt, but I don't mind the hurt because it feels so good … then it cal pattern …

fades away again … I know it's coming back, and it does … much, (The acceptance of pain as a condition of joy is the symbol of conflict much stronger and bigger, up through me, the best and happiest feeling I within physical life existence. The pattern of the present is not consistent could ever have, so happy I want to cry, and the hurt is so strong it's with the promise of the future as you perceive it within time-space illusion.

cutting me right up the middle in two pieces … then it goes back A conflict of realities, from your aspect.)

again, down out the bottom of me, and I know that there is nothing, nothing nicer I will ever feel than what just was, no hurt could hurt more I remember so well … if that is the joy, I will take the pain again,

if I can stand it …

112

FAR JOURNEYS

RAINBOW ROUTE

113

(It is not necessary. Your present consciousness now has a beginning CLICK!

point of reference. It is possible for you to perceive the destination of the rays of pure energy you have called loosh/love as it penetrates into your I can still feel the echoes … it's a life I don't remember, if I lived it earth space in several segments of what you call time. We will assist you in

… but the sharing of purpose, of unity required for simple survival …

your placement within the event. The delineation, the decision to distin-

nothing more than that can bring it out … the attachment beyond guish must be yours solely. Are you ready to do this?) husband-wife and parenthood . . . that, I remember . . .

I don’t know positively what I will be looking for, but I will never forget (Beyond physical manifestation, misinterpreted, misunderstood, and again. If that is what I seek, I will find it.

often overlooked, this is a facet of the prime expression, it is part of the learning process peculiar to the human experience.) CLICK!

… This is the goal in being human? To learn to do or be this?

(Indirectly, that is correct. It is but part of a broad spectrum. One goal is The sun is setting and I am sitting alone in the sand outside our tent.

to become the generator and transformer of such radiation. It is important The desert is cooling now, and soon it will be dark and it will become very that you perceive the scope and attunement of the recipient. The being on cold. I have built a fire from camel dung so that we will be warm …

the desert was attuned and therefore was only the recipient, but neither yes, I am Shola, and my woman and our two offspring, a boy and a girl, are transformer nor generator. The goal is generation and transformation only.

in the tent behind me. We are dying. I can see the village in the distance Do you desire this pattern of perception to continue?) and

the cooking fires are glowing in the twilight. We came with goods to If I have smoothed enough to do so . . .

trade but they would not let us enter. They cast stones at us to keep us (You have.)

away. We could not go across the desert to another village because we had little water and we are ill. Now after these many days, we have no water CLICK!

and no food. We have survived this far only by eating camel dung, something only a dog would do. Our two camels will live and we will die. They We are lying around the protective defense circle of the encampment cannot catch the illness, the plague that brings the open sores on our skin

… it is night. Our bellies are full and our feet hurt from the long march.

which do not heal. I would kill the camels to eat, but they are old friends.

The fallen leaves are dry, and make a noise when we roll over. This would We do not eat old friends to continue our own existence. It does not be bad if we were the outer guards, but we need not concern ourselves.

matter now. Food and water will not help. The illness is taking us along The outer guards will sound the alarm if the enemy attacks by night. My the course to death. There is nothing to be done. I do

not want to crawl helmet is close to my left hand, as is my shield. Near my right is my kuri, into the tent for fear they are gone, all of my family. I do not want to whose cold, sharp point and keen cutting edges have become as much a know I am alone. We have done so many things together, the pains and part of me as the arm that wields it. On one side of me is my friend Cheti, the joys we have shared … the working and being together, my woman who snores so loudly in his sleep that he awakens the birds. On the other and the young ones … no illness, no death can remove the bond that is my friend Dorn, who sleeps like death itself, yet is instantly awake at the grew and blossomed among us …

whisper of his name … we are but a part of this great host who will, in the morrow, meet and cut our enemy to pieces. We are three. I recall well the day we met on the training ground, many seasons past. Cheti, tall and stumbling, from the high mountains. Dorn, solid as stone, from the great forest, and I, from the flat midlands. Not a word was spoken among us for 114

days as we learned the killing arts. How that changed with our first battle, CLICK!

that moment when we formed a triangle back to back, surrounded by twice our number of yellow-hairs! Cheti, calling out such

stupid curses at I am standing in front of a stone building with a tall spire. Wide steps the yellow-hairs that even Dorn was laughing, and laughing gave us fresh lead down to the cobbled square, and the square is filled with a flow of energy, so we fought our way out of the trap … then we were three.

people, horse-drawn wagons and carts, and the dusty smell of human Through the battles, the wounds, many of both, too many from such as sweat, animals, cooking, and excrement from all manner of living things. I me to count … we are three. They are more to me than my brother, am a Priest, and although it is hot, I am wearing my brown-hooded robe whose face and voice I cannot now bring to mind … more than any that reaches to my ankles. It is cool inside the church, yet I am loath to woman I have ever known, yet not the same … and the man in that enter. The Ritual is about to begin, and I must attend and participate as village who asked me about my sons and daughters, and I replied I don't part of the duties of my calling. I am sick in heart at what I must do. It is know my sons and daughters if I have any, they go with a woman and I so different from that which I dreamed those years ago, my life in the service of the Almighty. The glory of the tolling bell in the spire, the rich have no woman, I am of the legion, so I have no woman or sons and voices of the choir echoing throughout the arched roof in Holy Harmony, daughters to whom I am bonded … just those women I can bed down the majesty and mystery of the Processional, the bowed heads of the when we capture a town … there was one, she was warm and did not reverent, kneeling people, they are the same. These are the parts that scream but whispered in my ear and I was as gentle as I could be with her, brought open the rising need in me, and I answered.

Now they are the I might have bonded with her … but we are three and it is different. I same, but I am not. Where is the need? It has left, unfulfilled. Where is would lay down my life for Cheti or Dorn, that they would live instead of the mystery? It has vanished under the weight of the unfolding years and me, and I know without their speaking that it is the same with them …

that which my eyes have seen and my ears have heard … the bell I do not understand why this is so, but they are me, I am them, and we are begins its tolling, and that is the signal that I must enter and join the three …

others. I turn and pass through the smaller door to one side and into the Great Hall. I move slowly down the main aisle to the waiting group at the CLICK!

Altar. The High Priest stands in front of the Altar, wearing his white robe with the golden braided symbols across the front. On his head is the Holy

… Yes, I have the percept three, three hundred, three thousand, Crescent Moon. Behind him are the Seven Keepers of the Realm, each three million, three billion, it is the same … common effort, willingly holding a staff atop which is one of the Seven Sacred Stars lighted by a or not, long association, repeated shared experience … this special flaming taper. As I approach the Altar, I know what I will see upon it, and bonding beyond self can take place without awareness of what it is or its I am correct. A young girl attired in a flowing gown of bright red to hide importance … often it can’t be called love because local custom would the blood

is lying upon its stone surface. Silken cords are attached to her then attach a physical sexual inference to it, male or female … thus it is ankles and wrists, then to large rings on the sides of the Altar. I know well covered over and sublimated …

the Ritual although I have never performed it. Once I have completed the (You are learning rapidly. Your human perspective serves you well. Do Sacred Act in the name of the Almighty, I will transcend that status of a you wish to move to the next point in your survey?) lowly Priest and become an Alternate Keeper of the Realm. When one of the Seven dies and departs for Chimmon, the Land of Eternal Joy and the I understand what is happening, the human portion … if it is still of that value, I am fine …

Throne of the Almighty, I will become one of the Seven. When the High Priest departs, one of the Seven will take his place and assume his Power (We will continue, then.)

and Glory as the direct Communicant with the Almighty. Perhaps I may energy, which has been self-generated or transformed by the human. We be that one … but now I am not sure. The dream of years past flickers will demonstrate this for you if you wish.)

within me and it is not this. If I do not perform the Ritual, I will be That would be great, I would enjoy that very much …

stripped of my robe, cast out into the street, where I will be stoned to (We shall see, as you put it.)

death by the populace. I move next to the Altar, and the High Priest hands me the Ritual blade, a slender, sharply pointed knife with a carved CLICK!

silver handle. I have been instructed carefully where to insert the Ritual knife at various spots on her body so as to keep from causing her death

… Our little dog with the funny name, Steamboat, he is walking with immediately, but to engender exquisite ecstasy within her while the High me along the road in early morning … he is such a friend … his Priest and the Seven give their Blessings … I raise the blade for the bright gladness at seeing me … he actually grins when he wants you to first swift insertion … and I stop, arm upraised. I am looking into the know what a nice guy he is, just because that's what his human close-by god does … his seeming need to be with you, enthusiastically do what eyes of the girl. In them are fear, puzzlement, resignation … and be-you want to do … just a word from me, and he comes running to me yond these, a knowing, a depth that carries me past the distortion of my joyfully … it's much more than the fact that I feed him, most of what dream and into what I was sure was always there … I lower my arm, we do has no relationship to such … w e have a bond that might be turn, and drop the silver knife, only a knife, in front of

the fat man who called friendship, he's succeeded in making friends with his god, doing calls himself a High Priest … I cannot do it, no, I will not do it …

things together, that's pretty good stuff, making friends with y our and I am free! … and a bright white ray comes through the ceiling of god … now he's been diverted into the wooded bank alongside the the Great Hall and centers on me, flashes through my entire being, the road, eagerly seeking an ever-elusive rabbit, but after a short search, he silver knife melts to a mound of metal, the silk cords drop from the girl, will return, bounding across the road to walk just in front of me again .

and the Altar trembles and splits open as the girl rises from it and stands

. . then I hear a vehicle, a car or truck, approaching behind the blind

… the men in the robes kneel transfixed, their eyes staring into blind-curve and I call to Steamboat to come to me, stand and be where it is ness at the brilliant white ray …

safe … it is a truck, and it comes around the curve quickly, too quickly

… just ten feet away from passing me, Steamboat leaps down the bank CLICK!

from the woods and directly under the wheel of the truck … there

is a rending scream as the wheel grinds over the lower half of his body,

… Yes! … and somewhere in man's history, a legend is born …

flattening it completely . . . the truck moves away and stops, and the the event is only a dim memory to me, if even that … but the emotion driver gets down from his cab, sadly apologetic … I get to where I felt, I experienced … that is clear and strong …

Steamboat is still trying to come to me, his front legs trying to drag the (What you call emotion is essential to the basic learning process. It is a crushed half across the road to where I am … I sit down on the road specific observable result of exposure to the loosh/love radiation. Therefore, in front of him, and he stops trying to move as I reach out and rub his it is the driving force, the creative energy which motivates human thought head, tears forming in my eyes as minuscule evidence of the deep and action. Without it you would remain as animals.) sorrow within me … through my hand, I feel the heavy tremors But animals show something, it is very close to what I know of as moving through his body from the pain, and he licks my hand and looks up emotion …

at me, asking, hoping his god will take care of the pain … I look at his body, the damage so irreparable there is no hope … he licks my hand (What you perceive is a reflection, a response to human radiation of such again … and I accept the

responsibility … I get up and move to the waiting truck driver, remov-

… This is coming too high and fast, I'll have to put this particular ing my pullover shirt as I go … a look passes between us and he knows rote away and run it later …

that I do not blame him, that he should harbor no guilt . . . sadness (Do you wish to participate in your final demonstration?) … As it is the shared, yes … but no guilt … I was responsible, not he … I move last one, I assume it is the most stringent … if I could just remember it to the truck, remove the cap from the gas tank, and push the shirt into the is only a demonstration, as THEY call it, seems more l i k e a t e s t . . . b u t i f tank, soaking it with fluid … then I remove the dripping cloth and I c o u l d r e m e m b e r , i t w o u l d n ' t b e a t e s t . . . there's something similar move back to Steamboat, who has watched me expectantly, too weak to here to all of human physical experience, this not-remembering business do more … I sit down, and his head drops into my lap, eyes looking up and the importance of it … the final test, y e s ! . . .

to me, asking, asking … gently, I move the cloth over his nose with one CLICK!

hand and place the other on his head … his eyes look at me deeply and the tremors in his neck subside slowly and are gone … I see and know

… I am sitting alone in the house and it is quiet … even our furry the closeness we share is eternal, and he somehow knows this, too …

friends seem subdued … both dog and cat lie half asleep in the front the conscious awareness in his eyes dims and is gone … and they are hall, facing the door, waiting … the sun has just set and twilight is only eyes with my tears in them …

moving in … soon it will be dark, and I can sit in the dark and see the house full of things, things she selected and liked so much, things she CLICK!

made do with until there was better, things her grandmother used, things she placed or hung in each room or put in closets and drawers where only

… But that didn't happen! Steamboat is alive! He is back where I she knew where they were … all an expression of her and bearing her came from, somewhere near my physical body …

reflection … but she is gone, she is not here as I expected … I don't (That is correct. The event occurred earlier in this physical life, a differ-

need light to see the things to remind me she was here … the sight

of ent animal, dog as you call them. You identified it as your present attach-

them does not disturb me and I would not change or remove them be-

ment. In the earlier episode, uncontrolled emotion overwhelmed you and cause they have her strong imprint … I can find her in the dark or in you were helpless. You did nothing to fulfill your responsibility. In your the light, it makes no difference … she taught me so much without present state of awareness, you exercised the control that is so important, knowing she did … the very female human response to moments large which displays your growing ability even in our synthesized demonstration.

and little, uncovered, uncolored except by her own perspective … all of The paradox attached to such vital energy, emotion as you call it, is the these she shared with me … so that I lead not one but three lives, hers, opportunity for growth it provides and the simultaneous possibility of stasis mine, and our meld … and she helped me learn release from one of the and retrogression. Control and direction thereof thus becomes a prime pur-

most difficult of all, that physical sexual drive is not the fundamental of pose in the evolving human experience. Understanding and comprehension this energy I don't know what else to call but love, but one of the most is the resultant and flows without effort. At no point is the goal to repress or common inducements to kindle the process … once the full flame is suppress such energy. Instead, it is enhanced when directed and

focused created, the inducement is not even the fuel that feeds it, but instead a into the channels for which it was originally designed. What you call your multileveled minor physical note in an infinite chord … I now under-

curiosity is perhaps the most unrecognized and undistorted form of such stand a mother and physical motherhood without being one … why a energy. Yet it is the underlying force that produces what humans consider woman likes to be a wife and the admix of the idealistic and the realistic their most outstanding historical achievement.) 120

FAR JOURNEYS

RAINBOW ROUTE

121

that foments such liking … a lifetime of human gamut in a fraction Now, I can tolerate it easily, the actual energy itself. The radiation flow is thereof … the whither thou goest, I go, is more than true, yet a release two-directional in the tube. The flow moving past me in the direction from from this part is needed and accepted … she goes with me and I go which I came is smooth, even, and undiluted. The flow that I am is moving with her … aloneness is an illusion … here or there, the flame is in the opposite direction and appears much different. It is organized in a eternal and we carry within us that which we have received and created more complex form. It is the same as the wave moving past me, but it

… she is returning now as I knew she would … and we will not contains a multitude of small waves impressed upon the basic. I am both exchange goodbyes or forwarding addresses, our idents in one another are the basic and the small waveforms, moving back to the source. The move-

i n d e l i b l e . . . j u s t o n e f i n a l m o m e n t i n t h i s p o i n t o f t i m e . . .

ment is steady and unhurried, impelled by a desire I know but cannot express. I vibrate with joyous ecstasy just by the knowing.

CLICK!

(The tube seems to become larger as another joins it from one side, and another waveform melds into me and we become one. I recognize the other (Your perception was quite clear, Ashaneen. The demonstration was suc-immediately, as it does me, and there is the great excitement of reunion, cessful.)

this other I and I. How could I have forgotten this! We move along to-

… It was very strange . . . one of us had released from the physical, gether, happily exploring the adventures, experience, and knowledge of the and I thought she was the one … then as it developed, I momentarily other. The tube widens again, and another I joins us, and the process became unsure, it could have been I … and I finally realized it didn’t repeats itself. Our waveforms are remarkably identical and our pattern make any

difference which of us … the result was the same … now, grows stronger as they move in phase. There are variegations in each which, of course, I don't have to ask if it has happened, but I know it will one day when combined with another related anomaly, create a new and important in our serial t ime …

modification of the total that we are.

(That is correct. The result is the same. We now believe you are prepared (The tube expands again and I am no longer concerned with its walls as to visit us, where we are as you call it, if that is still your desire. It will not still another I enters the waveform flow. This is particularly exciting, as it is be a demonstration, but our reality. However, we will guide you and return the first I perceive as returning from a completely nonhuman sojourn. Yet you to this point. It is important that you understand that such a visit, the intermesh was near-perfect and we became so much more. Now we momentary as it may seem, can produce within you changes that are irrevo-know that, somewhere, a consciously controlled physical tail, much like a cable.)

monkey's, is useful in ways far more than balance and acting as a third

… I do desire it, and I accept the responsibility for any changes that hand for holding things. It can be a very efficient means of communication may occur in me.

far beyond a super sign language just as eloquent as the spoken word.

(Open widely. Have fun, as you put it.)

(Steadily and surely, one I after another joins us. With each, we become more aware and remember more of the total. How many does not seem CLICK!

important. Our knowledge and ability is so great that we do not bother to contemplate it. It is not important. We are one.

(I am in a bright white tunnel and moving rapidly. No, it is not a tunnel, (With this, we divert from the underlying waveform and move away from but a tube, a transparent, radiating tube. I am bathed in the radiation which it. We watch motionless in unified respect as the action of it continues away courses through all of me, and the intensity and recognition of it envelop from us into an infinity. We also perceive easily the smooth originating my consciousness and I laugh with great joy. Something has changed, be-wave coming from such infinity and dissolving into the pattern from whence cause the last time, they had to shield me from the random vibration of it.

we came.

(Flowing through all of us is a coherent energy that is our creation, that That is why this point came into being. It is not possible to continue until displays immensely the reality of the whole as far greater than the sum of completion.)

the parts. Our ability and knowledge seem without limit, yet we know at (Continue to what destination?)

this point such is valid only within the energy systems of our experience.

(We believe it to be the source of the radiation, the creative emission and We can create time as we wish or the need arises, reshaping and modifying return. Communication is closed with those who have continued. The de-within the percept itself. We can create matter from other energy patterns, sire to continue occurs upon completion. It is more than your curiosity, as or change the structure thereof to any degree desired, including reversion to you call it, and difficult to transmit in a form we can understand. There original form. We can create, enhance, alter, modulate, or eradicate any have been attempts by those completed who are to continue, without suc-percept within the energy fields of our experience. We can transform any cess.)

such energy fields one into another or others except for that which we are.

(The ultimate home?)

We cannot create or comprehend our prime energy until we are

complete.

(A good beginning concept. A design which unfolds as perception grows.

(We can create physical patterns such as your sun and solar system, yet It is necessary now that you terminate your visit and return.) we do not. It has been done. We can adjust the environs of your planet (We will be with you, our curious I.) Return where! (Your physical envi-Earth, yet we do not. It is not our design. We can and do monitor, supple-rons) … Where is that! … (In-human, your physical body) … Oh, yes, I ment, and enhance the flow of the human learning experience, as well as had forgotten … Do I have to go back? (Reach for us and we will be with other learning experiences of similar content throughout time-space. This you in many ways. You have much to do. Go get them, tiger!) we perform continuously at all levels of human awareness so as to prepare (And a rote, as you call it, to play with.)

properly those entraining units of our prime energy for the entry and meld into the totality that we are becoming. It is the essence of our growth to do CLICK!

so. Such assistance and preparation is forthcoming from us only by request from one or more levels of consciousness within the entraining unit. There-

The return to the physical was near-instantaneous, my face and eyes after, a bonding is in effect through which many forms of communication were wet. I sat up in the chair and remembered. I

reached for the yellow pass between us until the ultimate transformation occurs.

pad and pen, to get the rote into words immediately. I knew I had (We know who we are, and one I laughs and we all laugh at the name changed. For the rest of my physical life, I would remember. But this this I had given us. We are an INSPEC, just one. There are many others would never change:

around us.)

(You are still incomplete. There are parts of you yet to be transformed, For those who would die, there is life. For those including that visiting portion so filled with curiosity. Each of us is incom-who would dream, there is reality. For those who plete. That is why we remain at this point, to reach back and gather addi- would hope, there is knowledge. For those who tional and remaining parts of us until we are complete.) would grow, there is eternity.

(Our curiosity desires the effect of completion.) (We move into the creative return flow again, the waveform that brought you here. When we do so, we leave this reality.) (Can this be demonstrated?)

(It is not possible. It is not within our knowledge to do so. When you have transformed and melded totally into your whole, you will comprehend.

NEWFOUND FRIEND

pened before but not this far on the edge, no need to abort and go back to Friend

physical … don't move, no movement … it's releasing me, easing back … totally different energy pattern, but intelligent, yes, must operate on M Band … certainly not …

(Didn't intend to push you.) The form was open, vibrating. (Your ident almost exactly like somebody else, my percept was he was you.) I smoothed. (That's O.K.)

Q U I C K C U E S

The form blanked. (O.K.?)

Open: Receptive

(There's no problem.)

Blank: Don't understand

Percept: Insight,intuition

The homing signal was still there, and I turned to move, when suddenly **CLICK!:** Change consciousness

Plied: The way it is

the signal cut off. It was gone. This had rarely happened before, usually **Closed:** Tune down or out

Rolled: Laughed

there was a reason. Almost instantly I got the percept. I turned back to **Curl:** Organized energy

Rote: Thought bundle

the form. It was dulled and closed, receding.

Dulled: Lost interest

(Hey, wait a minute.)

Run the rote: Get details

Flickered: Uncertain

The form opened slightly, blanked, motionless.

Smooth: Get it together

Ident: Name/address

(Can I help you?)

TSI: Physical universe

Lighted: Idea, happy

The form vibrated slightly. (You're human, or used to be?) **Turn in:** Consider

M-Band: Thought spectrum

I smoothed. (Well, yes, but not exactly the way you …) **Vibrate:** Show emotion

M-Band noise: Uncontrolled

(If you're human, you can't help, because you're addicted like all the thought

rest.) The form vibrated heavily. (Takes more smarts than any human or anyone who's ever been human. They're contaminated.) R e a l t i m e : 3 : 0 5 A . M . . . . b o d y r e s t e d , r e l a x e d . . . s e n s e o f w a r m t h I had a percept of great loneliness. (Try me.)

… gentle insistent signal, familiar … good enough, deep breath, ex-Small bits of rote drifted out of the form as it flickered half open. They hale, detach, unhook, down and out, then up … free of physical, up had a different pattern and I couldn't put them together, too strange. The slightly, roll, out of second body, leave it in parking orbit … now totally first response in me was wariness, then I remembered what I had learned.

free … begin to home on INSPEC ident … out of phase with phy si-I opened wide. (Try me.)

cal, moving … usual easy process … rapidly through dense inner The form flickered, then lighted somewhat. (Well, I have this friend, rings … ought to be some way to wake all of them up at once, that and … there's a problem. Here—)

would be something … not even a good simulation of hell … if you A large bulky rote rolled out of the form and straight to me. I gathered won't accept you're no longer physical, you're dead, dead, dead and still it in carefully, and certainly with caution. There are some rotes one would alive … now more out of phase, into the

center major ring, used to call just as soon do without. This one also had an alien ident. Slowly, I opened it Locale II … what an understatement, misnomer … at least it.

they've begun to understand and remember … dim forms, light up if you focus on them … this is where my father was, Dr. Gordon, Agnew

… more out of phase in spiral, nearly past the last outer ring …

Somebody grabbed me! Keep calm, cool, it can be worked out, hap-

126

FAR JOURNEYS

NEWFOUND FRIEND

127

CLICK!

major matter artifacts created by the dominant species, ident man or human if you remember your briefing. Local ident is New York.) The Tour Guide checked to be sure all members of the group were BB dulled. (Doesn't look very new to me.)

present. It had been an extensive cruise and this was the last point of (The human species are the ones that appear more vertical than

horizon-

interest.

tal,) the Tour Guide continued. (The various colors you perceive are emanating from an artificially produced covering used principally for decorative (May I have your attention, please? If you're ready, we will make one reasons. The larger mobiles are in fact artificial physical bodies which are more entry into TSI. I'm sure you will find it most interesting.) often temporarily inhabited by the dominant species, and use chemical Ident AA dulled. (I think I'll sit this one out.) reaction of an explosive force to provide operating energy.) Ident BB turned to his friend. (Aw, come on, AA, it's only one more, (You were right, AA. It's not worth the effort and that M Band noise is then we'll be heading for home.)

turning me inside out.) BB scanned his friend. (Getting to you, too, huh?) (One more, one more.) AA vibrated. (The exciting and amazing time-

AA focused raptly at the activity around them. (Fascinating, absolutely space illusion! TSI! Experience it in person! I could have stayed home and fascinating.)

got the same effect. See one, you've seen them all.) BB turned to him quickly. (What?)

(This is supposed to be different.) BB lighted.

(The incredible power. I've never felt anything like it.) (Sure,

sure.)

(What power?)

(… And I am instructed to caution you to be prepared for extreme (Don't you feel it? So many different kinds, all randomly mixed to-discordant M Band radiation), the Tour Guide continued. (So I suggest gether.)

that you shield yourselves accordingly.)

(Where, what are you talking about?)

AA turned to BB, half closed. (Same old buildup. Probably more rock, AA reached out, stretching. (Coming from them. The M Band energy more dust, more craters.)

patterns, thousands upon thousands, some hard, some soft, and the texture, (… Stay on the perimeter, keep a safe distance. You'll find enough to the texture!)

keep your attention at that point. Is everyone ready?) BB blanked. (You all right?)

(You coming, AA?) BB queried his friend unnecessarily. He knew him AA opened wide. (I'm fine. In fact, I'm wonderful. I never knew anything very well.

like this existed.)

AA turned. (Oh, all right. You'll never let me forget it if I don't.) BB suddenly lighted. (It's the MBand noise! You've sopped up too much

o f . . .)

CLICK!

(Not noise, BB,) AA cut in. (Certainly not noise. It's an amazing mixture of resonance, beat frequencies, standing waves, incalculable patterns.) (Noise. That's what the prep briefing called it. That's what everybody The blue-green ball rushed closer until it blotted out all other percep-

calls it. Plain old M Band noise …)

tion. Then they were hovering just above tall rectangular masses set in AA turned inward. (I wonder what it's really like.) orderly rows. In deep furrows between the masses, objects of various (What do you mean, really like! It's all over the place. All primitive life shapes were moving slowly. Noise level in the M Band was near unbear-

sets have it. MBand noise is MBand noise. Come on, let's get out of here, able.

the cruise group is leaving.)

BB focused down with disgust. (What a mess!)

AA still remained inward. (To be there, to be in it must be spectacular.) The Tour Guide began his carefully prepared spiel. (This is one of the 128

FAR JOURNEYS

NEWFOUND FRIEND

129

(I wouldn't know and I don't want to know.) BB grunted. (I've heard it home had wild stories about it, but even in the cruise rote, there's no official can be done, BB.) (Rumor, street talk.) BB vibrated impatiently. (Come mention, so …)

on, AA, we'll lose the group if we don't … AA! Where you going?

The form sighed. (All you have to do is ask. That's all, ask.) AA!)

AA lighted with unusual brilliance. (That's just great! I certainly …) (AA, hold it, hold it,) BB cut in. (You absolutely sure you know what CLICK!

you're doing? I remember some wild rote about parts of it that weren't quite so …)

AA entered the Intermediate Area, BB in his wake. He stopped in front (I wouldn't miss it for the KT-95!) AA turned to the form. (I ask. Now of a tall burly form that seemed to resemble the humans he had just seen.

what do I do?)

(I’m looking for the way to get to be human.) (Recorded: You asked.) The form turned and pointed, (fust go that way (This is ident Entry Station,) the form responded curiously.

and then turn right. Right, not left.)

(I want to do it.) AA vibrated. (I mean, I want to be human.) (Got it, down that way, turn right!)

The form blanked. (You want to what?)

(Not left.)

(I want to find out what it s like to be human, the way they are over down (Right.) AA leaned to BB. (Stick around till I get back, old buddy. Will there.) AA pointed. (I don’t mean permanently, just long enough to get the I have some stuff to feed you! Real rote!)

feel of it.)

(Yeah,) BB grunted sourly. (The cruise group has already left. That (fust long enough to get the feel of it.) The form turned inward, then means we’ll have to pull skip all the way home. Just don’t make it forever.) out. (Why would you want to do a thing like that!) AA lighted brightly and faded into the haze. BB stirred uncomfortably.

(Well, uh …) AA tried to sort out the pattern in himself. (We're on (You can wait here if you wish,) the form offered.

this TSI cruise, and when we went in over ident New York, I suddenly …

it was very strange, I wanted, uh, wanted …) (Thanks, I'd appreciate it.) BB dulled, then in passing, (What's to the (The M Band noise,) BB put in. (It got to him.) left?)

The form nodded. (Yea, the M Band noise. It'll do it if you're not The form spoke absently. (Oh, left. That's another department. Don't careful.)

want to get them mixed up.)

(I don't know how to express it.) AA flickered, attempting to coalesce.

(Oh, yeah.) Then perceiving the form more clearly: (Hey, who are you?) (It seems very important that I try it.)

(Ident Entry Director. ED. fust call me Ed.)

(fust for kicks, a high, something new,) the form suggested.

(Ed.) BB opened curiously. (You ever been through this human stuff?) (Well, yes.) AA lighted. (At least at first. Now, something more than Ed was silent for a moment, pulling in old rote. (Yeh. Coupla times.) that, I've never felt an interest this strongly.) BB

drifted aimlessly about the station. The Entry Director hovered (Where you from?) The form smoothed politely.

motionless, inward and closed.

(KT-95), BB came in quickly. (I know it's a hefty skip from here, but we BB ventured, (Busy operation you got here.)

had got a lot of rote about time-space and the TSI. No one had ever visited Ed opened slightly. (Yeh.)

it from KT-95, so when this cruise was offered … well, you know,) he (Must be a lot more organization than appears on the surface, huh?) added, (it can get kind of boring. You do something to break the monot-

(Yeh.)

ony.)

(You must have picked up some pretty strong rote being here.) (I can do it?) There was slight anxiety in AA's query. (Rumor rote back (Yeh.)

BB reached out without much result. (Haze is strange stuff. Cuts your was one more, on the outer edge. It came nowhere near the Station. Very percept back to near nothing.)

thin.

(Yeh.)

BB focused intently. The M Band noise was horrendous, yet not nearly (Effect of the TSI, huh?)

so bad as it had been down on the planet itself. Moreover, as he singled (Yeh.)

out each band, his percept showed that the noise was greatest in the bands BB rotated slightly, then did a few quick spirals. (We got a game back close to the planet. The farther away from the planet, the less noise. Very home where we do as many as a hundred of these one after the other. Pretty little was present in the outermost band. Little, but still there. BB blanked neat, huh?)

further. M Band doesn't decline with "distance" or dimension; even the (Yeh.)

cruise TSI briefing rote had the whole story. If there was no M Band, no (But you got to keep in practice if you're going to stay in the game.) life. M Band with noise, still primitive, no percept, no communication worthwhile bothering with. M Band, no noise,

great place to visit and (Yeh.)

gather rote, locals know where they are and what they are, easy but limited BB did several more tight spirals, then relaxed. (My friend will come communication—but not a place to stay. Nothing. No decline of inten-

back to the Station when he's through, won't he? Back here?) sity, no mix, noise and M signals. It either was or was not. Must be an (Yeh.)

effect of the Intermediate Area.

(Good, I can't miss him.)

BB focused tightly on a band in the center, nearly fell backward with (Yeh.)

shock, closed quickly and turned in. The band was composed of forms, BB blanked. (I can?)

living forms! He opened slightly, focused, one band after another. They Ed popped open. (What?)

were all the same. Thousands—no, millions, maybe billions of living (My friend has to come back here to the Station, doesn't he?) forms. BB closed and blanked completely, totally dulled.

Ed closed. (Hey.)

(Your friend's in there.) Ed came in both gentle and sad.

(I don't want to …)

BB opened slightly, still dulled. (What?)

Ed opened, vibrated heavily. (Hasn't your friend returned?) (When he hadn't appeared at the Station, that's the only answer.) (No, not yet. My percept was …)

BB still blanked. (He's in there?)

Ed accelerated. (I should have seen he was the type. Come on, kid.) (Yep.)

BB vibrated. (What's up?)

(What is it! There wasn't anything like that during the TSI cruise, when Ed faded. (Your friend's got a problem. Come on.) we stopped over …)

He turned and receded rapidly. BB followed, flickering wildly. Ed (You were focused totally on physical matter. Cruise groups pop through turned left and waited for BB to join him. (There. This is our big depart-the Intermediate Area, like avoiding a bump in the road.) BB blanked again. (Road? Bump?)

ment. No rote. The real thing. Get your own rote.) (Forget it, not important, human terms.)

BB blanked, flickered, wide open. Before him was the blue-green (But all those living forms …)

planet, indistinct. Around the planet were rings of haze, gigantic thick (Repeaters.)

rings, of indeterminate number. Demarcation between them was vague as (Repeat, repeat what?)

wisps and tendrils reached from one to the other. Except the ring nearly (They want to go through another experience as human.) touching the planet itself. It appeared isolated. With this exception, the BB closed tightly. Rote was coming so fast it was almost beyond con-others were flowing rapidly through portals in the Entry Station. No, there 132

trol. Incredible that anyone would want to go the route a second time.

BB vibrated. (All right, I will!)

The first looked bad enough. Yet the percept was obvious. Knowing AA, it Both remained half closed, focusing on the stream of forms passing was obvious. He opened. The shock wore off.

through the portal. Each appeared different from the others, yet possessed (Can we find him among all those others?)

some human trait, however small. In a few, BB's percept found a bright Ed smoothed. (Good possibility. Most First-Timers hitting the repeat and intense radiation that made him confused and uncomfortable. It was route usually end up in the outer band. Can you spot him? I mean, could his reaction to one of these that forced him open and smooth. (Ed, you're you get a percept on him easily?)

just doing your job, and I'm pushed about my friend AA.) BB lighted. (AA? Got more rote on him than anyone in KT-95. No Ed opened. (Yeh, I got the percept. Problem is, events like this don't problem.)

happen often enough and I lose the rote.)

(Then you may well be able to turn him out of it.) Ed swung around.

BB blanked. (Lose the rote! Impossible. Nobody does that.) (We better get over to the processing gate.)

Ed indicated the massive bands of living forms. (They did, all of em.) (Lose what rote?)

CLICK!

(Who they were. They forgot who they were.)

BB blanked and closed. No way anything like that could happen. It was BB scanned intently the multitude of animate forms passing under him.

vital to very existence. No one could be and do if you—how did Ed put it?

AA and his impulses. Never did know when to stop if he got interested.

—forgot who you were. Yet the percept from Ed was clear.

But these thousands upon thousands … He turned to Ed. (Must be big (Now, this outer ring,) Ed was continuing. (They are made of three types.

stuff to make all of these want to do it again.) One is the First-Timer, such as your friend. He just started to forget. Then (We warn them. It's all in the pre-brief rote.) there's the Old-Timers, who mostly remember after going the route, uh, (Must not be too clear.)

repeating being human a number of times. These hang around and do what (Here, run it yourself. I'll scan for your friend.) Ed tossed a bulky rote at they can to help. They don't remember quite enough to go home.) BB. He ran it quickly. Halfway through, there it was: … remain fully BB lighted with a great percept. (You're an Old-Timer, Ed.) established freedom of will and consciousness at the entry point. This is (Yeh. Anyway, you keep a scan for your friend. I'll run the rest of the rote guaranteed and is required by the

compressed learning system in use… .

for you, piece by piece.)

A final note of caution: Certain aspects of the human experience may BB opened wide, sweeping focus on the stream of living forms. So many produce specific and general effects which may be harmful and unless of them. Still, should be no problem finding AA. Wonder how Ed hap-controlled bring about habituation, with undesirable consequences. Your pened to get assigned to his job. Why him?

imprint affirms your understanding of this section.

(Wasn’t assigned to it. There was a hole where the ED used to be on my BB opened. (That doesn’t seem very clear to me.) time around, so I just jumped into it.) Ed was smooth and warming. (Then Ed vibrated. (That’s as far as we can go. Otherwise it would ruin the there’s this third type, the Last-Timers. They make one more recycle, uh, learning process.)

one more physical life as a human, and then they’re gone.) (What aspects, what effects?)

BB turned. (Where do they go?)

(It would ruin the …)

Ed rolled. (I dunno. Home, I guess. They never show up back here. And, (Come on, Ed, it won’t ruin me. I’m not going to be a

human. Ill never oh yeh. There's this other type we call the Seekers. Don't get many of them, touch the stuff.)

slippery as eels. Unstable, flick in and out.) Ed dulled, then closed. (Get your own rote.)

BB blanked. (As what? Slippery?)

(Never mind. Human stuff again.)

CLICK!

(Give me a rote and I'll run it.)

(Not worth it. Now, these Seekers, they're different Near as I get it, they AA moved among a large mass of beings of all shapes, sizes, and pat-

come poking around here and they still got a physical human body over terns. The crowd was so large that he could not easily perceive the other there, alive and kicking.)

side, where it ended. None remotely resembled anyone he had known (I didn't have a percept you can do that. I thought everybody came back back home in KT-95. He dulled, disappointed. Were they all waiting to be only after the physical body fell apart, wasn't operational.) human?

(That's what I had until I got here as ED. Then I began to spot them.) (All of 'em.)

BB was lighting strongly, (There he is!)

AA spun his focus. A short, human-looking form leaned behind him.

Ed was gentle, warm. (Go get him, tiger!)

(What?)

BB blanked. (Tiger?)

The form vibrated. (Ident Routine Entry Dispatcher. RED… . fust (Go on!)

call me Red.)

BB moved swiftly into the massive, flowing ring of vibrating forms. The (Red?)

M Band noise was nowhere near what he had expected, almost within (Not to be confused with … sorry, wrong department You

must have tolerable levels. As he slipped through the edges of various radiation joined in when I was busy. Need to get a rote on you so I can try to place groups, he was quick to percept that many if not most had signal strength you properly. Roll it)

equal to if not greater than his own. But it was different. It was not just AA opened and gave him the best rote he knew.

the noise, it was something different. Nothing like it in KT-95. Also, the Red lightened. (KT-95, hey? Well, that's a new one for me. Haven't had forms obviously were aware of his passing … short flashes of curiosity, a KT-95 since I've been here.)

retracting to let him through, pleasant acknowledgment. Nothing like the (I don't believe there ever has been,) AA replied. (No records, only side pattern he expected from his earlier percept.

rote which doesn't mean anything.)

Then he was with AA. (Some adventure, huh?)

(And you came in on a TSI cruise, and you want to get the feel of it, AA blanked, then lighted brightly. (BB! What are you doing here!) huh? M Band noise got to you, did it?)

(Came to get you, what else?)

(Well, no.) AA flickered. (Not exactly, you see, I …) (You didn't have to do that.)

(Not important,) Red cut in. (fust makes it easier to get you processed, as (Well, you were supposed to return to the Station. What happened?) a matter of rote. Now, first, which is your preference, male or female? I can't AA flickered. (I was?)

guarantee your choice, but I like to match it up with the entry point when I (You sure were.)

can.)

AA flickered more deeply. (I don't know. It seemed, uh, easier this way.) AA blanked.

BB smoothed. (How was it?)

Red vibrated. (Oh, you don't know the difference. You are out of the AA lighted. (Astounding! I don't have anything to express it.) woods.)

(Start at the beginning.)

AA blanked further.

AA rolled brightly, and hit BB with a solid rote before he could close.

(That's a human expression which … not important. I guess male or female doesn't make any difference in the long run, especially with you. So, any particular entry point desired?)

AA hesitated, then decided. (New York?)

136

FAR JOURNEYS

NEWFOUND FRIEND

137

(That’s all? Just New York?)

rary blanking of pre-entry activity is essential. Agreement to perform such AA lighted.

blanking is hereby authorized.

(New York it is, any available entry point. Either sex. Well, AA, that

* Anything to the contrary contained herein notwithstanding, all FES

should make it fairly rapid for you. Of course, it would be immediate if you remain fully established in freedom of will and consciousness at the entry select Bombay, Calcutta, or a dozen or so other points. Lot of action there.) point. This is guaranteed and is required by the compressed learning sys AA dimmed and dulled. (New York. At least I have rote. I’ve been there.) tem in use.

Red turned in and closed. (Yeah, sure. Sure, you do.) Then he lighted

* A final note of caution: Certain aspects of the human experience may briskly. (Take this pre-brief rote and focus through it all the way. You'll produce specific and general effects which may be harmful and un …

need to imprint your agreement and acceptance when you pass through the AA released the rote. Scare tactics. Need them to hold back the mobs entry point. Ready?)

that would swamp the place with applications. Well, it won't work this Red lobbed the rote and AA fielded it easily. AA probed the outer time. Can't get rid of old AA that easily.

edges, then opened. (Hey, this is complicated! You mean I have to sort He refocused on a nearby form. (How's it going?) through all this stuff?)

The form opened, then closed. (Who wants to know?) Red was closed. (Yep.)

(Ident AA from KT-95.) AA reached out, then withdrew quickly.

(Why can't I simply go and be human? Why do I need all of this?) (Where you from?)

Red went auto-rote. (When in Rome …)

(You don’t want to know.)

(I’m not going to Rome, I’m going to New York.) (Sure, I do. Your first time, too, I guess. How, I mean what made up your Red smoothed. (Oh, uh, yes, well, it applies anywhere. It’s the rules, kid.

mind to give it a try?)

I don’t make them. Now find yourself a quiet spot and run through it. I’ll The form dulled. (I didn’t.)

have you a general point, New York, in no time at all.) AA blanked. (Sure, you did.)

AA blanked. (No time at all! I thought time was …) (You don’t understand. Here.) The form rolled a rote to AA, who picked (fust run the rote, kid, run the rote.) Red unfocused and was gone.

it up gingerly.

AA leaned back and let the rote open:

The first layer was enough. Assigned HSTI-FES for retraining, don’t Agreement and Understanding.

come back until you’re better. Details enclosed in … The rote grew too Human sojourn only. First Entry

hot to handle. AA hurriedly rolled it back to the form, and the

form Status (FES).

reluctantly retrieved it. AA unfocused and turned away.

* Organized as a school for compressed learning. Successful graduates (A big event, isn't it!) A tall thin form emerged from the haze.

achieve tangent rating.

AA opened uncertainly. (Yes, it is.)

* For duration of human sojourn, firm agreement that time-space exists, (After all the planning and preparation, I'm finally going to do it. Fi-

has reality. Agreement of reality of particular entry point and its environs nally!)

(matter, planet Earth, sun, solar system, galaxy, physical universe), of time AA blanked. (Do what?)

indicated at entry point, of physical animate form designated as well as (Conduct my experiment!) The form lighted strongly. (I've studied every those of others, of past events recorded as human history, of complete aspect of the human system. Incredible how much effort it took. Only state biostructure as encountered.

of consciousness I can test it in. It could change everything!)

* In order for learning system to function at maximum efficiency, tempo-

(Really!) AA focused more carefully. (What does it do?) 138

FAR JOURNEYS

NEWFOUND FRIEND

139

The form closed. (Sorry, might spoil the experiment if you had rote.

The haze was gathering into clusters, some large, some small. Each had Maybe we'll meet as humans. See you on earth!) wispy spirals of rote that brushed through AA as he wandered among the The form faded, and as AA turned, he became aware of a tiny form clusters. In KT-95, that was usually a sign of poor discipline or at least huddled to one side. He focused. (Hi.)

leaky valves. Here, it didn't seem to matter. Further, there didn't appear The little one was wide open. (Hi.)

to be any lessening of the crowd. If anything, there were more. This (Going to make the big leap, huh?)

Intermediate Area was deceptive, AA decided. Has a tendency to distort.

(Yes … I hope so.)

What he pulled rote as hundreds must be thousands—all jammed into the AA blanked. (You hope so! Don't you know?)

Entry Station. And that little mixed-up one. Couldn't rote anything, not The tiny form vibrated. (I mean, it came so quickly, it was such a even where she really came from. She? What's she?

surprise. I'm still not used to it. It's really going to happen, after I tried so Suddenly, an unusually large spiral reached out from a cluster and long.)

(You mean they wouldn't accept you, wouldn't let you in before this?) yanked AA inward. (I need your help, I need your help!) (I guess not. I wanted to, but it never happened … before now.) AA disengaged just as he was about to fall into the opening cluster.

AA opened more. (I thought anyone could just walk up and get in, if (What's the problem?)

there were entry points available.)

The form swept aside the last vestiges of haze. (What are your plans (Oh, no. You have to qualify.)

after you enter?)

AA stored and scanned. (Ident?)

AA opened slightly. (Why, uh … to experience being human.) The form flickered. (What?)

The form vibrated. (No more than that?)

(Ident.)

AA rolled. (I'm sure that'll be enough for me.) (I don't know what you mean.)

(Do you know what they're going through over there?) AA blanked heavily, then focused softly. (If you'll run me your rote, I'll try (Well, I …)

to help. I understand, the excitement and all the anticipation.) (Untold suffering. Millions upon millions of them, lying and deceiving The form flickered more. (What's a rote?)

one another, violating every known law, including the ones they thought up (Rote is information you have that …) AA cut off, then reset. (Where themselves, illusion upon illusion, digging deeper and deeper patterns …

did you come from?)

It's horrible.)

The form lighted. (Over there. It was easy.)

AA began closing. (I'm sure it's not as bad as you …) AA

followed the focus. (You mean the planet where humans are?) The form vibrated more heavily. (It's worse. I've been studying and (Yes, yes.)

observing them for centuries. Worse!)

AA vibrated. (Then it's not your first time. You've been human? There AA blanked. (Centuries?)

must be some mix-up!)

(Now it's getting to a crisis situation, and somebody has to do something (No, no, there isn 't.) The form grew brighter. (I've never been a human, but I've studied them a long time. I've lived with them, they've fed and and nobody is, so I'm going to!)

loved me … and now I … I'm going to be a human. They tell me I've AA smoothed. (Do what?)

earned, I mean learned it. And I'm going to be a good one. I know it!) (I'm going in there and change it all. I need your help to do it. I need AA gave warm support and swung away, then unfocused. He turned in yours and everyone else's I can get. Here, here's what we're going to do.) deeply for some obscure rote that would explain it. Nothing.

The form threw a heavy rote at AA, who held on to it with some difficulty. The first layers not only shocked but astounded him. How could 140

rote ever get so tangled and distorted? He turned in and closed. How to a ny t h i n g t o w o r k r i g h t . . . n o t w h a t I e x p e c t e d … i t h u r t s . . .

release gracefully? The solution came easily.

what's hurt? … what who expected? … turn down the signals, turn He tossed the rote back to the heavily vibrating form. (Sorry, I can't them d ow n, they ' re tearing me up … too ma ny of them, too str o ng help you. I would like to, but I can 't.)

… help, somebody help me! … trapped … please, please, some- The form vibrated. (You can't! Why not?)

body help me, get me out of this thing … this is the last of AA, scream-AA smoothed even further. (Didn't you go through your pre-hriefing?) ing, screaming …

(Yes, of course I did.)

A new baby cried lustily in the bedroom of a New York tenement. Both (The part about blanking all previous rote? If they do that, I won't have a mother and midwife grinned happily, sweat running down their faces.

rote of meeting you, anything about what happened here.) The form dulled, then closed. The haze settled again in a cluster around CLICK!

him. AA unfocused and continued his float among the clusters. He became cautious and avoided all the larger exuding rote tendrils. The others BB flickered. (Is that all?)

he moved through, picking up fragments of events, patterns, states of AA lighted. (That's only the beginning.)

awareness totally inconsistent with those of home, KT-95.

BB turned in. (Some beginning. You weren't very happy.) Suddenly, a quick sharp percept drove into him. (Ident AA! Ident AA!

(Oh, after a bit I learned, did I learn! There's so much I can't get it all Ready for you at entry portal!)

into one rote … What's wrong?)

AA spun quickly, focused on the signal, following it through the haze (I'm getting a wild percept.)

and clusters. Looming through the haze was a large vertical slot, vibrating AA blanked. (From where?)

with a vivid energy AA had never before perceived. Red and Ed were BB smoothed. (Never mind, let's get on home. We're going to

have to waiting beside it.

pull at least four skips to get back to KT-95 on our own. So …) Red vibrated. (All set and ready, ident AA.)

(Home! I can't go back yet.) AA vibrated rapidly.

AA flickered. (What do I do?)

(Sure, you can.)

Ed leaned in. (Imprint here, acceptance and agreement terms contained (No!)

in pre-briefing.)

(Now, come on, AA …)

Two carefully controlled spirals emanated from Ed. AA sent his own (I had only forty-five years. Then I got sick. I didn't get to finish!) spiral in between them, then activated. Ed pulled back the spirals and BB smoothed. (Whatever forty-five years is, that's enough. Come on.) leaned back.

(I can't!) AA flickered violently. (I have only half the experience!) AA vibrated very highly. (What do I do now!)

BB blanked. (Half?)

Red hit it hard and high. (Jump! Jump through the slot!) (I was a

male this last time! Now I'm going to be female!) AA jumped.

BB blanked completely. (Male? Female?)

(That's right, old buddy, and they're as different as, as … That's what CLICK!

I'm going to find out.)

BB hardened. (You're in trouble.)

Intense contraction, constricting … overwhelming signal input of (Trouble? What trouble?)

unknown types … coming from parts of him he never knew existed (You got the pre-brief rote.)

… trapped, can't get out of here … nothing works … can't get AA flickered. (Of course I got it.)

142

FAR JOURNEYS

NEWFOUND FRIEND

143

(Then you know what's happening.)

lem, too. I had the percept of BB in total blank and I must have receded almost instantaneously. I picked up the second, went back to physical, AA blanked. (No, what?)

took a deep breath, and looked for the problem. The dog was barking BB smoothed. (AA, you're getting hooked, you're …) again to go outdoors.

The huge portal loomed ahead, a myriad of vibrations. AA was fading into the massive portal along with the others.

BB vibrated as strongly as he could. (AA, no … wait!) With a strange wave, AA disappeared. BB dulled and closed, and moved away from the stream.

(Sorry, kid.) Ed came in gently. (I didn't think you had a chance of a snowball in hell, but I had to let you try.)

BB dulled. (What happens now?)

(If he/she follows the pattern, he/she will get more and more and more involved in the human experience, dropping down a ring each time until he/she is at the bottom.)

BB flickered, still dulled. (Then what?)

Ed opened wide, carefully. (They stay at the bottom and don't come back, or they begin to work their way back up. Most of 'em stay at the bottom.)

BB dulled.

(Go on home, kid. Back to KT-9S.)

BB dulled and closed completely.

He slowly drifted out of the Station, flickering dimly. The haze was less, filled with occasional clean signals which did not have his ident; thus they did not attract or penetrate and so were ignored.

Then a faint percept did penetrate. BB popped open. A form was moving past him. He vibrated, stretched.

(AA! You did it! You broke out. How …)

The form stopped, motionless. BB pulled back quickly. It was not AA.

CLICK!

BB opened wide. (I got my idents crossed. That's why I hooked you.) I folded the rote back in slowly. (You have a problem, all right.) Then there was a strong signal to return to the physical. I had a prob-

RESCUE MISSION

145

11.

(Steamboat's dead! Dead! What a tragedy! I'll miss him, I'll miss him.

Rescue Mission

Let go, big dog, so I can take what's left and …) CLICK!

RESET.

Time: 3:55 A.M.… . full physical wakefulness, usual conditions plus the A big white dog much larger than Steamboat has him by the neck and not so usual recognition of INSPEC homing signal presence in this conis swinging Steamboat back and forth, Steamboat hanging relaxed, eyes sciousness … followed normal rollout … signal was strong …

closed.

moved upward and out, through rings, past Intermediate Area—stopped.

(Well, little fellow, if that's the way it is, thanks for staying around as Was stopped. Feeling of tiredness, hadn't been aware of it before. No long as you did. We had fun together. You gave me a lot of rote that always more homing signal, I was there. So were THEY. Great sense of warmth, will be a part of me …)

companionship, more.

Still in the jaws of the big white dog, Steamboat raises his head

slightly, (Mister Monroe.)

opens one eye, winks at me, and grins.

When it came in that way, I was never sure it meant work or play, if I could possibly tell the difference—or something else. It was something CLICK!

else.

(Some alignment and balance are needed.)

I was calm and relaxed. The tiredness was gone. More than that. My I opened wide.

energy was strong and clear. (Thank you.)

(Happy to be of service.)

CLICK!

I rolled. (Dogs will bark.)

(Now you can move to your friend from the other system. He is lost. He A huge white dog three times the size of our beloved Steamboat—what will need your help.)

a name for such a nice little dog—has him by the neck, the massive jaws I flickered. (I'm not sure I can help him.) firmly shaking Steamboat back and forth in quick jerks, Steamboat's

body (We will be with you. It is important that you help him.) already swinging limply.

I blanked. (Important?)

(No, no!) I can't let it happen! Is it really Steamboat? It is! He's dead, (Important to you. We interrupted your signal so that you would perceive Steamboat's dead! I'll kill that big son of a bitch, he'll never …

him. As you put it— time will tell.)

CLICK!

I smoothed. (Shall I make him aware of you?)

(Not yet. Take this— how do you say it? — rote with you and perhaps he RESET.

can use it. We call it the BHP-1.)

I opened wide. (Sure.)

The rote came to me and I tucked it away. I turned and focused ident A huge white dog three times the size of Steamboat has him by the neck in massive jaws that are swinging Steamboat from side to side, BB KT-95. There was some motion and there he was, still in the haze.

Steamboat hanging limply.

And flickering.

146

FAR JOURNEYS

RESCUE MISSION

147

BB vibrated. (What happened! You faded out, then back. Somebody pull spun slowly as he cautiously touched it. There was a long moment when a skip on you?)

everything stopped, no movement, no response. Then there was a click I blanked. (Pull a skip? What's that?)

and the entire rote slipped into him.

(Well, when we want to move from one pattern to another, we, uh, you BB turned inward and closed. I waited patiently. We were drifting know, pull a skip. If you catch somebody wide open, and you get in just slowly out where the haze was thinner. I had only two idents at this point.

right, you can pull their skip and they're off somewhere before they get a I either go back to where THEY were or back to the physical. I had nothing percept.)

on AA, only part of BB's rote, which wasn't enough. It had to

come from I flickered. (Why would you want to do that?) BB. I couldn't find AA for him.

BB rolled. (It's a game, fun!)

BB turned inward, opened. (It's all new to me. Real rote, huh?) I rolled with him. (At least you're open now.) (Yep.)

(So somebody did pull a skip on you!)

(And that's what AA got himself into?)

I smoothed. (No, not exactly.)

(Yep.)

(Even a skip leaves a trace. No one I ever met could do what you just did.

BB blanked. (This isn't your rote. Where'd you get it?) Neat. What was it?)

I smoothed. (Coupla friends of mine. Most of the rote was new to me, I flickered. (Well, I, uh, I had to go take care of something.) too. At least I didn't have a percept like that.) BB blanked. (Take care of what?)

BB hardened. (Well now, I got a hook on what '$ going on. A little I smoothed. (My body.)

complicated, but once AA has a1 percept of this quality, he'll jump right out (What body?)

of the mess.)

I rolled. (My physical body, of course. My physical human body. I still I flickered. (Uh … there's a little more to it, you see.) got one and it still works.)

(What do we do next?)

BB closed tightly, then opened slowly. (How, I mean, why, uh, what (I guess catch your friend when he comes out again. If you can find him.) BB smoothed. (I could find AA inside a black hole. Are you coming?) (I don't know. It simply happened. I'm trying to find out the why.) BB

BB had the percept that I would follow and he was right. He dove into turned inward, then opened. (You're one of those slippery eels!) I the haze and I was behind him, homing on his ident. We did a complete blanked, turned in. Part of Ed's rote came up. I rolled strongly. (I run through the ring where he had found AA previously. Not a flick. I was guess that's as good a percept as any.)

fairly sure that would be the case, which was bad news. Bad news for BB.

BB rolled, then hardened. (What about AA? Any more I can do?) There was always a chance that if AA was in the outer ring BB might (We'll try. You need a better percept of what's taking place.)

convince him to pull out and let go. Bad news for AA? No one could make BB turned inward. (I don't want any real rote of the stuff. I sure don't that percept, not even AA at this point.

want to get addicted.)

In my few stopovers in the outer ring, it had always been utterly fasci-I smoothed. (This rote won't do that. As a matter of fact, it'll begin an nating—the mix. Particularly the Last-Timers, those who knowingly were about to make their final recycle. They gave off a radiation that was inoculation process.)

unforgettable—tremendous vital power that seemed totally under control.

BB blanked. (Inoculation …)

Within that strength were all of the values and ideals that humans hold (You can close better. I'll push it slowly. Catch the edge. If you don't like important—not in time-space context, not in external control systems that it, don't take it in.)

demanded performance in a specific manner, but something entirely BB opened slowly. I eased the BHP-1 rote THEY gave me at him and it 148

FAR JOURNEYS

RESCUE MISSION

apart, something learned from being human. Most important, all under on endlessly. Humanoid forms were busily occupying themselves in nu-control, all a cooperating, melding part of the whole. They were commerous earth-type activities.

pletely open. You could get a percept easily of the crucible of human BB flickered. (Haze is sure thick. What are they doing?) experience that formulated such greatness—if you could handle it. I tried I smoothed. (What they want to do.)

once and it was too much. I returned to the physical and was wistful for (Just milling around like that?)

days thereafter. The key was that they got that way from being human.

(Some are fixing up their houses. Some are working. Let's see. Others are They were not that way at First Entry.

playing golf. There is a poker game going on in that building over there But now it was different. Their radiation had a familiar resonance, and I

…)

wondered why this was so. In the last time around, they evidently close it BB cut in. (What building over where? I don't get a percept on any-

all down. Part of the vitality seeps through; it really all can't be closed off.

thing!)

Yet they don't select history-making roles in that final run—they've proba-I flickered. (No building?)

bly performed such previously. They are inconspicuous, the mail clerk, the (Nope.)

plain dirt farmer, the sailor, the bookkeeper, not gathered as a group, but (No houses, streets, trees, fields …)

quietly spotted here and there in both time and place.

(fust human-type forms moving around. And a lot of haze.) If you ask their destination upon completion, most simply respond with I blanked and turned inward. The constructs—all of them were not a gentle warmth: Home. The percept comes out that way, but there's an physical matter, so BB ought to be able to get percept of them in some overtone, a flavor, a nuance that is only slightly familiar.

manner. The temporaries knew they were nonphysical; they built all of Yes, BB, there is much beyond the cold data. You pay the price and you this to be in familiar surroundings while they thought over and prepared for their next human cycle, built it out of … I lighted. BB had no ident get what you pay for. One way or another. How do you tell a fish what it's on such, thus he couldn't

pull a percept. It was strictly humans only.

like on dry land? You don’t try.

I smoothed. (I don’t think your friend is here. Let’s move on.)
(Hey, I thought you were with me,) BB cut in.

BB flickered. (Down?)

I opened. (I am, I am.)

(Yep.)

(He’s not in this mob. Now what?)

I swung over and did a flamboyant half-roll and dove through the borI smoothed. (Down another ring.)

der haze. You could spend thousands of years in the rings and never I turned, with BB close to me, and we moved quickly into the lower explore all aspects of them. Some parts are great, some not so great. I was haze. It had a different texture. Actually, from this point, it was difficult to told that whatever man can think of is somewhere in these rings; thus determine where one ring began and the other ended. A part of it was more is being added constantly as man thinks more. Also I was told some familiar to me. I had attended class here for a while.

humans do spend thousands of years here, rotating in and out of physical I hadn’t been closed enough. (What kind of class?) BB cut

in.

earth life. Could be exciting stuff if you planned and thought it out care-

(Where you learn how to help those who are still in a physical body.) fully. But most of them …

BB rolled. (AA wouldn't be here. Nobody could teach him anything!) (I got him, got him!) BB almost blew me away, he was vibrating so hard.

I turned inward. (If you say so.)

(Where?)

BB darted outward and down and I joined his descent… . We began BB was already spinning away and I was following closely. Curious to to enter the familiar cleared areas in the haze. Houses, parks, fields of finally meet the notorious AA … then I nearly rammed BB, he pulled growing plants, woods, forests, large buildings, rows of churches, it went up so suddenly.

BB flickered. (It's AA, but … there's something wrong.) AA still flickered. (KT-95? K-T-9-5. Yeah … yeah! What about it, I scanned to get a percept on his focus. There was a form, small, low BB?)

energy base, female, old woman, no, not so old, just …

BB smoothed softly. (We need to leave and go back now. Be with our BB vibrated and moved in. (AA! Hey, old boy, it's me!) old friends and buddies, give them some new games, give the big rote you The form flickered, half open. (Leave me alone.) got here, big stuff in KT-95. Let's go.)

BB vibrated. (It's me! BB!)

AA flickered. (Well, BB, you just might … you just might … No! I The form opened more. (What?)

can't, I haven't finished here! I'm going to be a big strong warrior. Then I BB reached out. (BB, that's who, old buddy, come to take you back!) can kill men, kill, lie around, women will get food for me this time, hunt, The form opened wider, vibrated. (BB! Where did you come from!) souse when I want, no babies to carry around …) BB smoothed. (Never mind, I'm going to take you back.) BB reached for him, but he faded quickly into the haze. BB started to AA flickered. (Back? Back where?)

follow, but I got in his way, and I stayed motionless as he slowly closed (Back where you belong.)

and dulled. Various forms moved past us, only one or two showing any AA vibrated. (Belong? I belong here! BB, I tell you, I'll never be a female curiosity. What small percept I had of AA indicated this would happen; again! I was all day hoeing in the fields, got up in that cold stone hut while he would drop faster than the typical First Entry. BB would have called it it was still dark, made the cooking fire, then ground the grain into meal, wild rote for sure if I had handed it to him before the fact.

then cooked food for the children, then he got up and I made his food, then the tax collector came and took three pigs, my three best, then my youngest (You're leaking.) BB opened slightly. (You can't be closed and open at baby died and I had to bury her longside the other eight, but I kept six of the same time. I got that percept as clear as if you 'd thrown it at me.) the fourteen alive till the plague got me, and all the time he just was lying I rolled. (I'm still learning.)

around or hunting, or taking a club to me, then him and those other men (I guess you're right,) BB went on. (It would have been pure ragged-came in sousing drunk on wine and laid it to me, all of them. That plague edged wild rote to me. Smooth, slick handle — anything, AA hitting a high was God's will. It took me away from all of that!) one like that! What got into him?)

BB blanked totally, flickering. I started to move in, and suddenly there (Being a female, a woman.) I plied carefully. (Must have lived it three, was a barrier, a force pushing me back. I kept trying, but it wouldn't let four hundred years back, uh, past, uh, before now.) me get close to AA. I had never felt anything like it. I finally

stayed away.

BB blanked. Serial time was too much for him. I had a percept that was BB opened carefully. (AA, I came to help …) new to me, too. I had always assumed repeaters lived sequential lives (I don't need help,) AA cut in. (I know what I'm going to do. I'm going relative to time. Either this is not the case or AA is the rare exception.

back and I'm going to be a warrior, a big powerful man, and I'm going to BB opened slightly. (That's the way it is being female?) spread my seed from one corner of England to another. Old King Henry I flickered. (Well, uh … that's the way most females lived back then.

won't have nuthin' on me, he won't!)

It's different now … I mean, different for some of them.) (AA!) BB vibrated heavily.

(And how many of you humans are female?)

AA blanked, then flickered. (What? Oh, it's you, BB. What do you I flickered again. (About half, I guess. Ought to be half.) want?)

BB vibrated. (Why would anybody want to be a woman!) BB smoothed carefully. (Let's go home.)

AA flickered. (Home?)

I smoothed. (There are compensations, balances. Some males

suspect (Back to KT-95. How about it?)

women secretly rule the earth.)

BB focused intently. (Do they?)

152

FAR JOURNEYS

RESCUE MISSION

153

I turned inward, then rolled. (I’m male at this point, and I suspect they would lean in our direction, which I had learned indicated the beginning do.)

of remembering—or the last vestiges of the forgetting process. My usual BB turned inward and closed. I was indeed learning from him in an reaction was: Had I been like that? Had I ever been so unaware? It de-inverted form. Evidently his KT-95 was nothing remotely like being physi-pressed me to accept the fact that I probably was. I don’t remember or I cal and human. Explaining the process even with a cloud of rotes seemed don’t want to.

too big to me. Still, there was a sense of warmth, friendliness, even famil-For the first time, I realized the M Band noise was lower in this muck.

iarity with BB that didn't fit. I liked him. Nice fellow. Very human in his Almost immediately came the percept, naturally: stupid. Nobody is doing responses. Maybe the energy base is common through all systems, physical much thinking at all. They're in a state of shock from dying, having or otherwise. Only the experience, the rote is different.

nothing to hang on to, so scared they can't handle it, so they put their BB popped open. (So what about AA?)

heads in the sand and try to hide. The typical wave of compassion went (We can try again.)

through me, and I cut it off. Others are working on the effect, this end of (But you're not on it.)

the blockage. I'm supposed to be with those who try to help cut back the I blanked. (On it?)

cause. I don't know which is more difficult.

(Your percept has it as wasted effort.)

(He's not here.) BB came in grimly. He was barely open. I turned inward.

I lighted. (I leaked again?)

I had long ago defused the rote of my painful early climb—no, BB rolled. (A little.)

blundering is more apt—through these close-in patterns. My subsequent (AA is in a pattern. I'm not very smart, hut my percept is, you can't training experience was minimal at the most. But I knew the next ring change it but you have to try.)

inward. It wasn't nice. Beyond that was physical life. The two were BB smoothed. (Once more, only once more.)

tightly interwoven, the thick ring just slightly out of phase with physical (Where have I heard that before!)

matter. It was the interface between one reality system and another. Even (I owe it to him, is that the way you put it?) from this perspective, it was difficult for a novice to distinguish instantly I plied. (One more. But it gets kind of rough from here on.) the differences in the two. But I could.

I turned and gathered up courage, closed tightly. The haze ahead was That was the problem. The inhabitants of this ring couldn't. They much thicker, dull gray, with only occasional flares of light moving didn't or couldn't or wouldn't realize they were no longer physical. They through it. I understood the lights; they were those from the outer rings were physically dead, no more physical body. Thus they kept trying to be coming in, trying to help or meeting loved ones at their physical death. I physical, to do and be what they had been, to continue physical one way had tried this several times, although I don't seem particularly suited for or another. Bewildered, some spent all of their activity in attempting to that kind of action. Usually, I pass through these rings as rapidly and communicate with friends and loved ones still in bodies or with

anyone unobtrusively as possible.

else who might come along, all to no avail. Others were held attracted to We entered slowly. Almost immediately, I began to feel uncomfortable physical sites in which they had instilled great meaning or importance and my percept indicated BB was more so. Any prospect of locating AA during their previous human lifetime. All had long forgotten or blocked was totally up to him. I threaded our way among the countless forms deeply the technique that once was so basic: the M Band.

hanging motionless. Actually, their movement was so slow as to be almost Still others interpreted their change in status as simply a bad dream or imperceptible. These were the ones who had just been released from their nightmare, and were waiting and hoping to wake up soon.

physical body via death and vaguely knew they had but didn’t have the I moved in cautiously, with BB tight behind me. He was almost com-rote to do much, if anything, about it. Occasionally as we passed, one pletely closed, just scanning for ident AA, no more. I don’t blame him. I 154

would have turned and spun away fast if it had been my first run

through were strapped to the arms. A round, pointed shield was in each left hand, the place. The M Band noise was thunderous, a cacophony of fear, anger, a long wooden spear in the right. They were marching very rapidly. This and about every other human emotion, every desire, every need connected was out of the ring. This was real physical life rote.

with human physical existence. All open, naked, uncovered, up front. As The M Band noise was much less. I opened more. (You ident your we entered more deeply, I kept expecting BB to signal me, but he didn't.

friend?)

Physical earth and those aboard for the ride were intermixed now as I BB flickered. (It's very solid, but … that's him! There's the human speeded up the search, moving faster and faster. But you could tell the out in front alone, then AA is the one just behind him … but he's difference. Those still physical seemed less distinct, not quite but almost different. So much other rote on top of him. AA is weak. Can't get any transparent. Suddenly, I got a pull from BB and stopped immediately.

strong percept. The other stuff is too strong. What's going on!) I smoothed. (He's still in a physical body at this point. He's a warrior.) (I got him!) BB vibrated strongly. (Not much, all covered over, but it's BB blanked. (What's a warrior?) (He kills other humans.) him!)

I turned away from a totally blanked BB, reached out, and focused

for a I flickered. (Where?)

percept on AA. Almost immediately, I hit a wall of resistance that pushed BB leaned. (That way!)

me back violently. Try as I might, I couldn't force through it. It was the I turned inward. That way, that way, that way … was out of time, same as I encountered before when I reached for AA.

no, another time. Moving to another time ident was not exactly some-The column of troops moved along the road and deep into a ravine, and thing I performed often, not willfully. Then I had the percept from our I saw the enemy troops hidden above on each side of the ravine. A great last contact with AA. It was a different time frame, too. Get lost, left sense of knowing came through me, and I reached out frantically to the brain. Then, very clearly, there was that soft vibration in me. (It is impor-

warrior AA, but the barrier threw me back. I knew what was going to tant for you to go. He will help.)

happen and it did. When AA's column was deep in the ravine, the hidden I lighted brightly.

soldiers stood and unfolded the ambush, and a shower of spears rained down. AA was one of the first to fall. He writhed in the dusty road, face CLICK!

down, trying to get up to join the battle, but the spear in his back had driven through him and into the road, pinning him down.

Blood poured BB vibrated. (I thought you couldn't pull a skip!) into the dust, and after a moment his body relaxed and went completely I flickered. (Well, I …)

limp.

(And both of us in the same pull!) BB rolled. (You don't accept your own I vibrated strongly at BB. (Get down there, get to him. I can % so you've strength.)

got to! Bring him back up here.)

I smoothed. (That's a skip?)

BB moved quickly, and I focused as he went down to the battle scene. I (Just like we do it in KT-95.) Then BB cut off as he scanned the action give him credit, all the action and killing didn't flicker him in the least. He below us.

tugged a struggling AA out of the warrior body, and brought him up We were hovering over a rugged countryside, rocks, sand, very little toward me. As he did, I was astounded. As he came closer with AA, a vegetation. Sunlit cloudless sky overhead. Directly below us was a dusty barrier kept pushing me back. Finally I signaled BB to stay where he was.

road. Marching along the road three abreast was a column of men, eighty AA, still in the shape of the warrior, struggled and vibrated heavily. (Gotta or ninety in number. Each was dressed in some kind of knee-length coat, kill the enemy. Kill them, kill them. Gotta

get up and kill them …

no sleeves, wide leather belt just above the hips, heavy vest over the chest.

A short double-edged sword hung through a loop in the belt. Metal plates 156

FAR JOURNEYS

12. Hearsay

Where's my spear, my shield? Gotta get up and kill them. I'm missing all the battle. Leggo of me. You're makin me miss the fightin, it'll be all over Evidence

and I'll have missed out … Gimme my spear. Where is it? … Gotta go and fight, go and fight and kill!)

BB vibrated. (He doesn't know me! I can't hold him much longer!) I flickered. (Let him go.)

BB blanked. (What?)

Time: Indeterminate, night . . . Went through usual unhook pattern, no I smoothed. (Let him go. There's nothing you can do for him at this signal present … with many options open … decided to return to point.)

BB on my own if I could … ident BB KT-95 … then ran stretch-

out BB released the struggling form, and the AA warrior slipped quickly method … through the rings without incident, then to edge of thin down into the battle, trying fruitlessly to pick up a shield and spear and haze of Intermediate Area … went motionless to get percept of BB

join the battle. Unable to do so, he stared at his hands, bewildered, then close in, as he didn't seem evident … percept brought surprise …

began to beat at the enemy troops with his fists, which passed through he was directly under me. Closed and dulled so tightly, no wonder he was them as if they didn't exist. But he kept on trying.

hard to find.

I turn to BB. He was dulled and completely closed. (Come on, let's go I opened and vibrated. (Hey, BB, I'm back.)

back.)

BB opened slightly, then lighted. (Well! I had about given up on you.

BB opened slightly. (Back where?)

Had you stuck in your human body.)

I rolled slightly. (Sometimes I am.)

CLICK!

There was no percept from him regarding AA, and I wasn't going to bring up the subject if he didn't. It was a tender rote at this point and I We were in the Intermediate Area near the Station. BB was dull, mo-knew I didn't have the answer he wanted. If there was one at all. Just to tionless, half closed.

keep the action going, I stretched, did about three snap rolls, and returned I lighted. (How did you like that skip! Right on target!) with a flourish.

BB opened slightly. (Yeah, fine.)

BB plied. (What was that?)

I suddenly became uncomfortable. There was something I had forgot-

(Just getting some exercise.)

ten. It was important. I became more uncomfortable. Something de-BB opened. (We got a game back in KT-95 where we use that kind of stuff. Want to try it?)

manded me, my attention. There was an urgency. Yes! My body! Got to I lighted. (Sure!)

get back.

BB rolled slightly. (You just try to do what I do. That's all there is to it.) I vibrated. (Gotta leave! I'll be back!)

He turned, spun off, and I stretched behind him. Focused tightly on his BB opened wide. (Hey!)

ident. It was like holding on to a greased pig on a sheet of ice, only the ice He faded to a pinpoint, then out as I dropped away quickly. I barely was three-dimensional—no, worse than that, it had many dimensions. It noticed passing through the rings … then there was my second in orbit was whirling, stopping, starting, moving slow then fast, passing through around the physical … I slipped in easily and slid for the physical, and strange flashes of percepts, into a brilliant sun and out the other side, in. I sat up, feeling tired, unusual. The problem that called me back was dodging around clusters of forms who seemed startled at their percept of strongly evident. My body was too cold. The blanket had slipped off.

us. All the time I hung on to BB's ident much as the last skater in a crack-percept to know the game before you get into it, certainly if it was played the-whip, in and out of clouds, bands of energy that were like gusts of hot in KT-95.

and cold air, electrical shocks, straight through the walls of a magnificently There was the other part, where and when the game took us. What was spired city. I was afraid I couldn’t hang on to his ident much longer, afraid the effect of such energy as the two of us expended upon the areas we if I let go I’d be thoroughly lost. He stopped suddenly and we were back pushed through so indiscriminately and without purpose. How many ants again in the thin haze of outer earth environ. I was shaking.

did we destroy because we didn’t look or care where we stepped on the BB vibrated brightly. (Good fun, huh?)

golf course fairway. What happened when a hundred played the game?

I flickered deeply. (Yeah, good fun. Who invented that one?) The locals would consider such things natural disasters or God’s will, BB blanked. (Invented?)

whether ants or archetypes. Either way, it’s a strange percept, possibly (How did it get started?)

being such an instrument. One illustration of ultimate impersonality, per-BB plied. (Oh, I don’t know. Always been around. You can begin a haps.

complete new one if you want. The fun of the game is to add to the old BB cut in. (Hey, you all right?) I

something new inside, in the middle, or on the end, sort of a

surprise. Get opened. (Yeah, sure.)

it?)

(You were closed and flickering. Had a percept you were going to skip (Yeah. We humans have something like it called follow-the-leader.) back to that physical body again.)

BB lighted. (That's right, follow-the-leader! You did real well at it. You I opened and rolled. (No, no. Not yet, anyway.) (Why bother with it?

must play the game a lot.)

Why go back at all? Leave it where it is.) I turned inward. The percept I flickered. (Not, uh, not recently. But I did fly airplanes and that had come up more than once, to say the least, and so far I had rejected helped.)

it. The first question always present was: What would I do or be if I did?

BB blanked, and I went on. (Incidentally, what happens if you miss a There was still a missing element. I knew I could pass through the rings turn, or lose the ident?)

easily and I might hang around in one of the upper segments and BB rolled strongly. (You lose!)

participate. Plenty of interesting action there. Most if not all of it

was (What happens to the losers?)

focused on helping the human process work better. That seems a good BB flickered. (I don't have any rote on that. They never come around to and essential part of the training system, but it's still preparation.

play again. My percept is, they get lost.)

Preparation for what? That was where the missing element came in.

(And stay lost?)

Those Last-Timers in the outer ring were going Home, but my percept (Well, they never come around to play again, as I indicated, so I don't Home had seemed to grow dimmer rather than clearer and cleaner as it have a rote on it. Often we have as many as a hundred playing in a group.

was supposed to. I hadn't visited There in a long, long time. I opened Nice game, huh?)

carefully. (Well, it's, uh … I haven't quite finished school, learning (Yeah.) I then had one final query. (What is all that stuff we went yet … and I need a physical body to do it.) BB had blanked through?)

completely.

BB plied. (Don’t have a rote on that either. Nobody bothers with that (It’s sort of a game,) I went on, (and I’ve agreed to play it.) BB lighted.

junk, it’s just a game.)

(Oh, a game! Yeah, I can get that one.) (I’ll give you a short rote on it Some game. I had a clear percept on my dropping BB’s ident anyplace if you think you can take it.) BB rolled. (After that last skip with AA, I along the track. I would have lost and have been lost. I probably would can handle anything human.) I turned inward. He had mentioned AA have stayed lost, too, I’m sure. But it didn’t happen, and I got a strong without flickering, and that

was great. He was smoothing. I put together an edited rote, short form, of BB turned inward, and I knew he was sorting out and scanning the rote my nonphysical action since 1958, leaving out the THEY sections, and I had given him. Things like sleep and wake-up needed new percepts on tossed it to him. He took it in, closed, was still, completely motionless.

his part. Also I knew what he was leading up to. But he put it off.

Then he opened wide, rolled, and flickered.

He opened, flickering. (These three curls that came down the … uh, I vibrated. (It's not that funny!)

beam, you call it. Who were they?)

BB finally smoothed. (I got an ident I can use for you! RAM the Bam!) I plied. (I don't know.)

He was off again, flickering and rolling hard.

(They seemed to know you.)

(Just RAM will do.)

(Maybe they were from KT-95.)

He finally quieted down. (Well, Ram, I get the percept that you were just BB rolled. (That is wild rote … oh, joke fun. But you seemed to know a locked-in, hooked-on human until this thing came up. You had some them. You wanted them to take you with them. Why?) strong action after that! You didn't have much smarts.) I flickered. (I don't know.)

I plied. (I still don't have much.)

(And you sure do things the hard way.)

(Ever meet them again?)

I rolled a little. (Percept you can do any better?) (Not that I have a percept of.)

BB flickered. (Why, any dumb curl with only half his ident could …) BB turned inward again, then out. (What about these curls that helped I cut in. (How about with no ident?) you when you needed it, or percepted you did. Who were they?) BB blanked, then vibrated. (No, you don't. You're not going to get me in I smoothed. (Probably from the upper rings. There's plenty of that going that game! I'm staying the way I am!)

on. Again, most humans don't have any percept on it except what they call I rolled and turned inward. I guess, from an external perspective, much dreams, uh, wild rote.)

of my response in my early OOBE states would seem ludicrous. Now I can BB turned inward again, then opened, flickering. (Well, I get the per-

laugh at much of it myself. At least I know the human school game can cept that there's too much wild rote floating around here.) work. But there are many unknowns. What do you do after you graduate?

I blanked. (Which in particular?)

Where and how do I practice what I've learned?

(That rote on human compressed learning, human structure, the one you BB broke in. (Say, uh, RAM.)

tossed me.)

I opened. (Yes?)

I flickered. (Yes?)

BB flickered. (I take it back. You're not really a dumb curl.) BB went on. (That's not wild?)

I rolled. (Thanks. I needed that.)

(My percept is that it fits.)

BB blanked. (You did?)

(I got another rote, and when I overlay the two, one of them is certainly (That's a joke. Human fun.)

wild.)

He turned inward, then went on, opening. (How did you get a percept and start running this leaving-your-body game?) I blanked. (What rote is that?)

I flickered. (I don't know. It just happened.) (The one we got in the TSI brochure, about all the places and things we (Other humans do it, too?)

would be visiting. All about earth and humans, how it got started, what it's (I know at least some do. I've met them. Problem is, most

go OOB

for … all of that stuff.)

during sleep and they don't remember it when they wake up back in the I closed, then opened slowly. (They don't match up?) physical.)

(Here, get your own percept.) BB tossed a rote at me, and I took it curiously. And unfolded it.

162

FAR JOURNEYS

HEARSAY EVIDENCE

163

CLICK!

versed the carbon-oxygen cycle. Yet all had a basic uniformity. Like the First Crop, they would reseed at regular intervals and terminate their life Someone, Somewhere (or both, in millions, or uncountable) requires, spans automatically. To avoid the uneven distribution of chemicals and likes, needs, values, collects, drinks, eats, or uses as a drug (sic) a substance radiation which had been prevalent in the First Crop, he immobilized the ident Loosh. (Electricity, oil, oxygen, gold, wheat, water, land, old coins, Second Crop. Each was designed to stay principally in its own

section of uranium.) This is a rare substance in Somewhere, and those who possess the Garden. To this end, each was given firm tendrils which burrowed Loosh find it vital for whatever it is used for.

deep in the more dense chemical matter. Attached to this was a stem or Faced with this question of Supply and Demand (a universal law of trunk which helped elevate the upper portion upward for its share of Somewhere), Someone decided to produce it artificially, so to speak, needed radiation. The upper portion, broad, thin, and somewhat fragile, rather than search for it in its "natural" form. He decided to build a was designed as a transducer of carbon-oxygen compounds to and from Garden and grow Loosh.

the crop unit. As an added thought, brilliant color radiators accompanied In the natural state, Loosh was found to originate from a series of by small particle generators were mounted on each unit, usually near the vibrational actions in the carbon-oxygen cycle and the residue was Loosh top and symmetrically centered.

in varying degrees of purity. It occurred only during such action, and He set up circulating patterns in the gaseous envelope around the crop, secondarily during the reactive process. Prospectors from Somewhere principally to aid in the reseeding process. Later, he discovered that the ranged far and wide in search of Loosh sources and new discoveries were same turbulent effect served as a means of harvesting the Loosh. If the hailed with much enthusiasm and reward.

turbulence were violent enough, the Crop would be blown down, the life So it was that Someone and his Garden changed all this. Far off, in a span terminated, and the Loosh would discharge. This was especially use-remote area, he set to work on his experiment. First, he created a proper ful when an immediate Loosh supply was desired at a particular point environment for the carbon-oxygen cycle, where it would flourish. He rather than at Harvest Time.

created a Balance with much care, so that proper radiation and other Despite all of this, the Second Crop was most unsatisfactory. While it nourishment would be in continuous supply.

was true that a much greater quantity was attained, the unrefined Loosh He then tried his First Crop, which actually did produce Loosh, but produced was of such low grade that it was scarcely worth the effort. In only in small quantities and of comparatively low grade, not significant addition, the growth period was now too long and no increase in quality enough to take back to the heart of Somewhere. The problem was two-resulted. Some vital element was missing.

fold. The life period was too short and the crop units themselves were too Someone hovered over his Garden for a long period in study before he minute. This brought about limits in quality and quantity, as the crop had attempted the Third Crop. It was indeed a challenge. True, he was par-no time to generate Loosh in such close tolerances. Moreover, the Loosh tially successful. He had grown Loosh. Yet the product of his efforts fell far could be harvested only at the moment of termination of the life span, not

short of the wild, uncultivated variety.

one moment before.

It was inevitable that he perceived the answer. The Third Crop was His Second Crop was no better, if as good. He changed the environ-living proof of this Truth. The original carbon-oxygen cycle must be inment to another part of the Garden, where the density was gaseous rather cluded. Mobility must be restored. Both factors had shown great promise than liquid and the higher-density chemicals formed a solid base and thus in high-grade Loosh production. If size could be added to this, much were still available. He planted numberless units in many varieties in a could be accomplished.

new form, with a great increase in size, some many thousands of times With this plan in the forefront, Someone removed various sample units larger and more complex than the simple unicellular First Crop. He refrom the First Crop, which was still thriving in the liquid portion of the 164

Garden. He modified them to exist and grow in the gaseous area. He Crop. He knew now that the Third Crop Mobiles were too large and too adapted them first to take nourishment from the Second

Crop, which he long in life span to be ultimately practical. If grown in large numbers, the permitted to abound for this very purpose. Thus it was that the first of the entire Garden would have to be expanded and enlarged. There was not Mobiles, the Third Crop, came into being. The Mobiles took nourish-space enough to grow such massive single units and the proportionate ment from the Second Crop, thus ending its life span and producing low-leafy Second Crops to support them. Also, he reasoned correctly that grade Loosh. When each huge Mobile terminated its own life span, addi-more rapid and increased mobility would expand the Conflict factor, with tional Loosh was produced. The quantity was massive, but the frequency a resultant higher Loosh output.

pattern of the Loosh residue still left much to be desired.

In one single motion, Someone terminated the life spans of all the It was by accident that Someone came upon the Prime Catalyst as lumbering Third Crop Mobiles. Going back to the First Crop in the regards Loosh production. The monstrous and slow-moving Mobiles had a liquid area, he modified and expanded them into a multitude of shapes life span far out of proportion to their nourishment input. The growth and and sizes, gave them complex multicellular structures of high mobility. He life-termination process was of such length that soon the Mobiles would designed into them a pattern of balance. There were those that ingested a all but decimate the Second Crop. The entire Garden would be out of Second Crop type of carbon-cycle unit (basically immobile) as an energy balance, and there would be no Loosh production whatsoever. Both the source. There were others, very highly mobile, who required for energy the Second and Third Crop faced

extinction.

ingestion of other mobile Modified First Crop units.

As the Second Crop grew scarce, energy needs of the Mobiles became The completed circuit operated quite satisfactorily. The stationary Sec-acute. Often two Mobiles would seek to ingest the identical Second Crop ond Crop modification in the liquid environment flourished. Small, highly unit. This created Conflict, which resulted in physical struggle among two active liquid-breathing Mobiles took nourishment, “ate” the Second Crop or more of the ungainly Mobiles.

modification. Larger and/or other active Mobiles consumed for energy Someone observed these struggles, at first bemused with the problem, the smaller “plant eaters.” When any Mobile grew too large and slow, it then with great interest. As the struggles ensued, the Mobiles were ema-became an easy target for the smaller Mobiles, who attacked in voracious nating Loosh! Not in fractional amounts, but in sizable, usable quantities numbers. The chemical residue from these ingestive actions settled to the and of a much higher purity.

bottom of the liquid medium and so provided new nourishment for the He quickly put the theory to the test. He removed another unit of First Stationaries (Modified Second Crop), completing the circuit. The result Crop from the liquid Garden area, redesigned it for the gaseous environ-was a steady flow of Loosh—from the life-span termination of the Stationment—but with one significant change. The new Mobile would be some-aries, from the intense

conflict among the Mobiles to avoid ingestion, and what smaller, but would require the ingestion of other Mobiles for nour-finally from the sudden termination of the life spans of such Mobiles as ishment. This would solve the problem of overpopulation of Mobiles, and the inevitable product of such conflicts.

at the same time would create good quantities of usable Loosh during each Turning to another portion of his Garden—the gaseous area with a conflict-struggle, plus a bonus if the new class of Mobile terminated the dense-compound base—Someone applied the same techniques with even life span of the other. Someone would be able to transmit to Somewhere more advanced improvements. He added many varieties of Stationaries practical amounts of reasonably pure Loosh.

(original Second Crop) to provide sufficient and diverse nourishment for Thus it was that the Rule of the Prime Catalyst came into being.

the new Mobiles he was to create. As in the other Garden area, he made Conflict among carbon-oxygen cycle units brings forth consistent emana-such Mobiles into a balance of two species, those who ingested and drew tions of Loosh. It was as simple as that.

energy from the Second Crop Stationaries, and those who required other Satisfied that he had found the formula, Someone prepared the Fourth Mobiles for sustenance. He created them in literally thousands of original 166

types, small, large—yet none so large as the Third Crop Mobiles—and accordance with the Law of Supply and Demand (Vacuum is an unstable ingeniously gave each some appurtenance for conflict. These took the condition), as the amounts of Loosh from Someone's Garden only par-form of mass, elusive speed, deceptive and/or protective coating and color tially met the requirements of Somewhere. Collectors on behalf of the radiation, wave-action and particle perceptors and detectors, and unique Others actually entered the Garden of Someone to take advantage of higher-density protuberances for gouging, grasping, and rending during those small emanations of Loosh overlooked or ignored by the Collectors conflict. All of the latter served neatly to add to and prolong the conflict of Someone.

periods, with the resultant increase in Loosh emanation.

Someone, his work completed, returned to Somewhere and occupied As a side experiment, Someone designed and created one form of Mo-himself with other matters. Loosh production stayed at a constant level bile that was weak and ineffective by the standards of the other Mobiles in under the supervision of the Collectors. The only alterations were ordered the Fourth Crop. Yet this experimental Mobile had two distinct advan-by Someone himself. Under instructions from Someone, the Collectors tages. It had the ability to ingest and take energy from both the Station-periodically harvested segments of the Fourth Crop. This was done to aries and

other Mobiles. Second, Someone pulled forth a Piece of Himself ensure adequate chemicals, radiation, and other nourishment for the

—no other source of such Substance being known or available— to act as younger, oncoming units. A secondary purpose was to provide occasional an intensive, ultimate trigger to mobility. Following the Rule of Attrac-extra amounts of Loosh created by such harvesting.

tion, Someone knew that such infusion would create in this particular To reap such harvest, the Collectors generated storms of turbulence and Mobile species an unceasing mobility. Always, it would seek to satisfy the turmoil in both the gaseous envelope and the more solid chemical forma-attraction this tiny mote of Himself engendered as it sought reunion with tions that were the base of the Garden itself. Such upheavals had the the infinite Whole. Thus the drive for satisfaction of energy requirements effect of terminating life spans of multitudes of the Fourth Crop as they through ingestion would not be the only motivating force. More impor-were crushed under the rolling base formation or smothered under waves tant, the needs and compulsions created by the Piece of Someone could from the agitated liquid area of the Garden. (By peculiarity of design, not be satiated throughout the Garden. Thus the need for mobility would Fourth Crop units could not maintain their carbon-oxygen cycle sur-be ever-present and the conflict between this need and that of energy rounded by the liquid medium.)

replacement would be constant—possibly a continuous high-order

Loosh The Garden pattern of “Life” might have gone on thus throughout emanator if it survived.

eternity had it not been for the perception and inquisitiveness of Some-The Fourth Crop exceeded all of Someone’s expectations. It became one. On occasion, he would study samples of Loosh from his Garden.

apparent that a consistent, useful flow of Loosh was being produced in the There was no motive in doing so, other than the fact that Someone may Garden. The balance of “life” operated perfectly, with the Conflict Factor have held a remote continuing interest in his project.

producing immense amounts of Loosh and a steady supplement brought On a particular analysis of a Loosh sample, Someone had casually ex-into being by the constant life-span terminations from all types of Mobiles amined the emanations and was about to return it to the Reservoir—when and Stationaries. To handle the output, Someone set up Special Collectors he became aware of a Difference. It was very slight, but there it was.

to aid in the harvest. He set up Channels to convey the raw Loosh from His interest centered immediately, he looked again. Woven delicately in his Garden to Somewhere. No longer did Somewhere depend principally with the more common Loosh emanations was a slender fragment of upon the “wild state” as the principal source of Loosh. The Garden of purified and distilled Loosh. This was an impossibility. Purified and dis-Someone had ended that.

tilled Loosh resulted only after the “wild state” Loosh had been processed With the success of the Garden and the production of Loosh by culti-many times. The Loosh from the Garden of Someone required the same vated means, Others began to design and build their Gardens. This was in treatment before it could be used.

168

FAR JOURNEYS

HEARSAY EVIDENCE

169

Yet here it was—so finely graded in its refined radiations that it could or Loosh radiation was originating from one particular section of the Garden.

would not return into compound with the raw substance. Someone reaf-Quickly, he hurried to the spot.

firmed his tests, and the result still was positive. There was a factor in his There it was—an experimental Modified Fourth Crop unit, one of Garden of which he was unaware.

those that contained a Piece of Himself in its functional pattern. It was Quickly, Someone left Somewhere and returned to his Garden. Outstanding alone under the leafy upper portion of a large Second Crop unit.

wardly, all seemed the same. The solid-base gaseous areas of the Garden It was not “hungry.” It was not in Conflict with another Fourth Crop were an endless carpet of green reflection from the thriving Second Crop.

unit. It was not acting in defense of its “young.” Then why did it emanate The Modified First Crop in the liquid area was in perfect accord with the distilled Loosh in such great quantity?

Action-Reaction Law (a Division of Cause and Effect). Someone per-Someone moved closer. His perception entered into the Modified ceived without delay that the Difference—the source of distilled Loosh—

Fourth Crop unit and then he knew. The unit was lonely! It was this lay neither with the First nor with the Second Crop.

effect that produced distilled Loosh.

He found his first momentary touch of distilled Loosh emanation in one As Someone drew back, he noted another unusual inconsistency. The of the units of the Fourth Crop (which by then had filtered throughout Modified Fourth Crop unit suddenly had become aware of His Presence.

the plantings of the Second Crop). The flash came during the unusual It had collapsed and was jerking in strange convulsions on the solid-base formation. Clear liquid was being expelled from the two radiation-perceiv-action of this unit as it entered into a life-terminating struggle with aning orifices. With this, the distilled

Loosh emitted became even more other Fourth Crop unit. This alone would not create distilled Loosh, pronounced.

Someone knew, and he probed deeper for the source.

It was from this that Someone propounded his now famous DLP For-It was at that moment he discovered the Difference. The Fourth Crop mula, which is in effect in the Garden at this time.

unit was not struggling in Conflict over an ingestible remnant of a weaker The balance of the story is well known. Someone included the funda-Fourth Crop unit or a tasty frond from a nearby Second Crop stem—or to mental in his formula: "… The creation of pure, distilled Loosh is avoid termination of life and ingestion by the other conflicting Fourth brought forth in Type 4M units by the action of unfulfillment, but only if Crop unit.

such pattern is enacted at a vibratory level above the sensory bounds of It was in Conflict to protect and save from life termination three of its the environment. The greater the intensity of said pattern, the greater the own newly generated species huddled under a large Second Crop unit output of Loosh distillate… ."

waiting for the outcome. There was no doubt about it. This was the action To put the formula into effect, Someone designed subtle changes in his that produced the flashes of distilled Loosh.

Garden, all of them familiar to every historian. The splitting of all Crop With this clue, Someone examined the actions of other

Fourth Crop units into Halves (to engender loneliness as they sought to reunite) and units in the Garden. He found similar flashes when other Fourth Crop the encouragement of dominance of the Type 4M unit are but two of the units took the same action in defense of their “young.” Still, there was an most noteworthy innovations.

inconsistency. The sum of all such flashes of distilled Loosh emanation As it appears now, the Garden is a fascinating spectacle of efficiency.

from all such actions by the current Fourth Crop units would not amount The Collectors have long since become Masters at the Art of the DLP

to half of the total he had found in the sample from the Reservoir. It was Formula. Type 4M units dominate and have spread through the entire obvious that another factor was present.

Garden, with the exception of the deeper portions of the liquid medium.

Systematically, he hovered over the Garden, extending his perception These are the principal producers of Loosh distillate.

to all areas. Almost immediately, he found the source. High-order distilled From experience, the Collectors have evolved an entire technology with 170

complementary tools for the harvesting of Loosh from the Type 4M units.

BB lighted. (Oh, he and the rest are a bunch of curls from the system The most common have been named love, friendship, family, greed, hate, next to us.)

pain, guilt, disease, pride, ambition, ownership, possession, sacrifice—and (Why did they offer the cruise to you in KT-95?) on a larger scale, nations, provincialism, wars, famine, religion, machines, BB smoothed. (Well, it was sort of a, uh … trade. We do it all the time with systems near us.)

freedom, industry, trade, to list a few. Loosh production is higher than (What did they get in trade?)

ever before …

BB lighted. (Games, games! We got more games than any system four skips in any direction!)

CLICK!

I turned inward and closed. It was getting too hot to handle. If the rote was real … a huge if. I began to drop off. Anger, the feeling of being on I was closed tightly, turned inward, stunned. My first

reaction was, the receiving end of a huge deception. The resentment at being manipu-there had to be some mistake, this was not the story-history of earth, BB

lated, wanting to strike out at those who were conning me … us …

had it mixed up with some other port of call on their cruise schedule. Yet all humans … who were taking something from us without our consent as I ran the rote again, the overlay of what little I knew of earth's zoologi-or permission. What happened to the freedom idea? Was every thought cal and human history was uncomfortably accurate, albeit from another and action we took guided—no, directed and controlled just to produce perspective. The food chain of earth's ecobiologic system had been well more Loosh, whatever that was, for a breakfast table or a fuel tank in a established. Knowing this about Mother Nature, some of the hard-core Somewhere? And what could I do about it, even knowing? I dulled deeply philosophic speculators had often pondered where the human animal fit in and dropped off more and more …

the process. The downside was obvious, who ate us! Before, it had been (Hey RAM!) BB was fading rapidly. (Where you going!) just that, speculation. Now …

BB opened, plied. (You get the percept, RAM?) Return to the physical was near-instantaneous, exactly as if I had I dulled. (Yeah, I get it.)

pushed the panic button, which I had not done for so long. Strong sense (Well, then,) BB went on, (what's Loosh got to do with

learning?) of tiredness, both mental and physical, neglected to check time of return.

I opened slightly. (And you got the rote before you came to Earth?) Low energy, no desire to do anything. Unable to get to sleep. Got up, BB smoothed. (Like I gave you, it was in the TSI cruise brochure. It was went to the kitchen, and made a cup of coffee. Sat and stared at the cup.

in with hundreds of other rotes we got before we left.) With no energy or desire for exploration during the two weeks followI opened more, but tightly. (Where did the brochure come from?) ing, in a depressed state, the only production that surfaced was: (Why, uh … yeah, from the Cruise Director.) It is sunset. The Guernsey has walked many miles around the pasture in (Where did he get it?)

her forage for food. The grass had been more lush today here, though BB flickered. (I don't have a rote on that He just dumped them on us she did not bother to consider why. She had come through the gate and rolled, "Here's the exciting and interesting stops we'll make on the calmly when He directed her to do so, instead of the gate across the cruise." I got a good percept because it was the last one we'd visit, so it was road. He knew she would find better grass here, and that was why He the last rote we got. That's why it's so clear. Some of the others are dim moved her here, though she did not realize it. She only did what He because they were in the middle. Not the earth rote, or humans. It's all directed.

clean, not wild at all.)

But now, at sunset, it is time again. She must go to His place. There I hardened. (And where did the Cruise Director come from?) FAR JOURNEYS

13. Shock

is a goading pain on her underside that tells her this. At His place up on the hill, it is cool and there is more food. And He will take the Treatment

pain

away.

The Guernsey moves up the hill and waits beside His place. Soon, the gate will open and she will walk into her position in His place, and eat the grass He places before her. While she eats, He will relieve the It took me several months to adjust to the loosh rote. “Adjust” is a very pain until morning.

broad word to describe a complete cycle of shock, rejection, anger, depres-After that, the Man will walk away with white water in a round sion, resignation, acceptance. My sequence paralleled remarkably the pat-container. The Guernsey does not know where he got the white water tern others have discovered and studies as to human response when noti-nor why He desires it.

fied of approaching death from illness or injury.

Not knowing, she doesn't care.

Something was dying in me. I had long realized that the God of my childhood did not exist, at least not in the form and substance envisioned by my enculturation. However, I had deeply accepted the concept of creator and created—I had but to look around me at the elaborate and intricate order of design, of the symbiosis that made the whole process operate, the trees that grew plumb-line straight up if given the chance, that provided me and other oxygen breathers with what we needed while we fed to them unknowingly for a long period our waste products, which they needed to exist … the balance of the entire planet, whose outer filtering bands of energy permitted just the proper quantity and quality of sunlight so critical to biologic growth … and of course the food chain.

The loosh rote explained everything very neatly. Most important, it explained the purpose, the reason for it all, the why of it. This factor had long eluded me. The loosh answer was simple and obvious. The reason was there, in very prosaic fashion. We were indeed producing Something of Value. Loosh. If one finally was able to get past the emotional barriers involved, it became hard even then to find holes in the general concept.

An explanation of total human behavior and history.

That left the INSPECS.

Were they the gardeners, the loosh collectors, or the overseers?

The question tantalized and tortured me for many weeks before I finally decided I must find out one way or another.

On a particular night, after great difficulty in getting two cycles of sleep, I awoke with a start and lay quietly in bed. Evidently my fear of 174

what I might find was greater than I thought, as I unhooked with diffi-existence, when pain occurs, anger, hate … these can't be the same as **culty** from the physical, then slipped out of the second body as it hovered.

love.

I scanned for the INSPEC homing signal, but there was none. This discon-

(How would you define love in your terms?)

certed me at first, but I was determined and foolhardy. I used the ident I knew that would be next in the order of things, and I couldn't come INSPEC—the total rote I had on them—stretched out, focused, and let go.

up with an answer. Throughout history, great minds and greater philoso-There was a quick, short sense of spinning movement, no impression of phers had given it a try, with only partial success, and I was none of these.

passing through the rings, then deep blackness, and I was motionless.

I wouldn’t even consider trying.

Nothing more.

(But you know it exists. Love is not an illusion.) The percept was forming that the ident I had used wasn’t enough. I I released the loosh rote and turned deeply inward, scanning. It was easier from this perspective, or perhaps it was the presence of the might be at the gate to

INSPEC

INSPEC territory, but I didn’t have the passport to energy. It presented itself much as a simultaneous mixture and sequence enter. I had never tried to go to them, they had always met me. I had no of musical chords and short melodies, only it wasn’t sound, it was patterns percept of their reality/state; therefore I had arrived only at the site of our in colors of light. Scattered among the clutter of harmony, dissonance, meetings. If I focused on …

discord, excitement, fun, fear, and emotion, and beginning shortly after A warm vibration washed through me. (Very good, Mister

Monroe. You birth, I had the percept of occasional surges of white … first from my are quite correct.)

mother and father, then smaller flashes I was unable to identify as to I began to relax somewhat. At least I had gotten this far, and at least source. I kept scanning through my early years for any slight glimmer of THEY didn't call me RAM.

white originating in me, that / put forth. To my dismay, all I could find (Perhaps you would like it better if we used the ident by which we know was one small white glow for an Airedale dog named Pete. I was certain you best. We believe you are ready for it now.) that the girl in high school, what was her name? … not even a flicker, Ready for it, a name, they know me best … What could that be?

either way.

(Ashaneen)

(Most common misconception, early-manifested survival drive.) I agreed.

Ashaneen. It was both familiar and strange. Again, that feeling of trying Yet I could understand why. The bright red and pink chords and urgent to recover from severe amnesia, and the gentle patience of those trying to melody were impressive even from this viewpoint; no wonder an ignorant help me remember. But the loosh …

curl such as I was would come up with the wrong percept. I went on (We are aware of the disturbance you have undergone. It was necessary through the mess that was I in a fast-forward mode, and I could spot sure that you experience this. It goes with the territory, as you put it.) and solid white surges here and there of which I had then been unaware, Then the loosh rote was real! I began to flicker …

and their reality depressed and saddened me—because I found no (It is the translation that is not real. The difficulty of placing earth and significant emission from me that was remotely similar. It was all human values properly into perspectives and energies that are not of time coming in, and I took it and didn't respond. I finally cut it off, would go and space is a factor very familiar to you.)

into it no further. I wasn't much of a loosh producer. Too many other I turned inward, picking up the loosh rote. Loosh, an energy generated color chord patterns and melodies. Except for now. I knew some strong by all organic life in varying degrees of purity, the clearest and most emissions in a few points were coming out of me. Did it take that long!

potent coming from humans—engendered by human activity which trig-

(You understand waveforms. All come from the same baseline, the colors gers emotion, the highest of such emotions being—love? Is love loosh?

and the white. The difference is frequency and amplitude.)

(Continue, Ashaneen.)

I knew what THEY were doing, and I appreciated it. My focus was being But according to the rote, loosh is thrown off when life ends its physical 176

FAR JOURNEYS

SHOCK TREATMENT

177

diverted from what I thought was unpleasant back into an abstract yet stronger. There would be no loosh production without at least one, uh, trunk-and-roots position. Using the same stuff—interactive experience—one bull. So he is an indirect loosh producer, vital to the method. That one began to learn to express anger, pain, fear, and all the rest, and finally would infer, so are grass, hay, water, minerals, and the rest.

—hopefully, if you passed the course—a special energy waveform labeled (Remember your waveforms, beat frequencies you like so much.) love. Yet we don't really know what it is and, with my suspicion growing, Let's see, here. If a smart transmitter propagates certain waves, they can how to really use it.

resonate with other related vibrations of like kind to form a multiple (A carefully designed school of compressed learning.) pattern which if thought of as light—would be: white! So in and of itself, To learn to be high-quality loosh/love producers. The fact

that human you don’t have to be the end-product antenna or transducer, just one of physical consciousness was for the most part totally unaware of being the oscillators. You may never display actual loosh radiation, but you have involved in the process may be an important ingredient itself. Precious a vital part in its production. Remembering the scan of my early years, I few are cognizant of the nonphysical agenda, at least overtly. It was get-felt much better.

ting pretty heavy for my cognizance. Yet I began to get a very faint (Then why are you disturbed?)

percept, elusive but it was there. What would happen if the Guernsey cow The percept still itched inside me, THEY were right. What would I do did discover that her milk had value? What could she herself do with it if with loosh/love if I had a large warehouse full of it? Hand it out? It would she didn’t have a calf to feed it to? Could she save it? Could she spend it only come back with interest and I would have to build another warehouse on more hay or protein-vitamin blocks to lick? What if she then discov-to hold the compounding, growing volume. The percept surged brightly.

ered man was taking the milk she produced? Rebel, refuse to deliver any It was so obvious … Someone, Somewhere. If I could …

more milk? Then she would no longer have a pasture in which to graze, (You are not ready at this point.)

protection from wild dogs, a bull when she needed it, and most of

all, no Ready to go to Somewhere? To meet Someone? And in all of this, how barn to go to where she could get relief from the pain. Without a sense of do you fit in, my friend? If I had the courage to ask these …

serial time, she forgets that the pain eases eventually. Perhaps even know-

(We are not Someone, as you put it, nor are we from the Somewhere you ing, she wouldn't care. She wouldn't want to mess up a good thing. There-

indicate. Also, we are not the keepers of the Garden of Earth, nor the fore: Who cares? Who would care!

gardeners. Nor do we collect and transfer human-developed loosh/energy (To use your term, you can't beat the machine.) elsewhere or when. We do not fit into any portion of the human compressed The percept was still there, faint, still to be explained or satisfied. What learning process. However, we have observed its generation and growth about those who do beat the machine? There always have to be excep-

from its inception. We do participate when needed without interrupting the tions, no machine is perfect, only one anomaly is needed to prove a statis-

learning sequence. Such need is expressed when there is blockage in the tic or create one. Are they carted off to be ground up into hamburger flow. Such participation ultimately serves a vital need

for us.) meat? If so, is hamburger a sort of super loosh or something entirely I had a need to ask the question. Is …

different? Is this also a part of the machine product, or is it rust that is (Somewhere is not the heaven of your history. It was created, as were all scraped away and discarded?

other systems.)

And the bull calves, what is their role? Never will be loosh producers; it Then Someone …

takes only one bull for every fifty cows, so there's a surplus. In nature—the (Is a creator who was created. You are a creator who was created. Each of machine?—left alone, there's a way that is automatically taken care of you does carry a small rote, as you call it, of Someone, who created you.

… the impersonality of that prospect of dominance and predation is Through that rote of Someone, your creator, you carry a percept of the certainly not in the winning column. Hold it there, the percept is getting creator who created Someone.)

178

FAR JOURNEYS

SHOCK TREATMENT

179

I turned inward. Even with this viewpoint, it was hard to set aside serial coursing through me as I responded to the radiation, unable to prevent it logic. The easy percept was how the multitude of distortions, misconcep-and barely keeping it under control. This would most emphatically be the tions, misdirections came about. A little knowledge can be dangerous, and ultimate heaven, the final home …

human creative imagination took over from there. If there had not been a (Observe more carefully. You are capable of doing so.) I looked through Someone …

the smoked-glass shield that was my INSPEC friend … and I was (Humans would not exist.)

grateful, for I knew if I responded to this degree from just the reflection, I went over the idea of loosh/love. It must be quite a place to handle the leakage, the full force of the radiation would have shattered me, I that much loosh, this Somewhere. It would fall neatly into many concepts was not ready for it, if this was the percept from the distant edge …

of heaven. I grew wistful. Maybe we could go just to the edge of Some-there, in the long view, was a radiant living form of incredible size, where, so I could get a feel of the place/state where there was so much my first percept that of a tall standing humanoid, arms outstretched in love, surely near it, but not in it, just to observe from a distance. It would answer so much . . .

front, palms upward … but just as quickly, it was not … instead, a

(That is not too much to ask, Mister Monroe. We can arrange it. Close shining globe, edges indistinct, behind it another, identical in appearance, tightly …)

behind it another, a continuous cascade moving away into infinity, beyond my percept ability … from each came numberless beams or CLICK!

rays, some huge in their diameter, others no wider than a pinpoint, all uniform in size throughout their length and beyond my percept as to their

… Even closed tightly, the radiation was so strong that it was nearly destination, some of them moving past me so close that I felt I could unbearable … I felt as if sweat were pouring off me, I was melting …

reach out and touch one …

but it wasn't heat … and I began to heave with great racking sobs and (Would you like to do so? We will help you if needed.) I hesitated, then I couldn't understand why … then the radiation eased, and I opened a with the warm assurance from the shielding INSPEC form, I stretched a little. There was a form between me and the radiation, shielding me, and I part of me out, cautiously, and touched the smallest ray nearest me …

could perceive a corona effect all around the form from the radiation in an instant, the shock spread throughout all what I thought I was, and I beyond. It reminded me deeply of religious

paintings I had seen, only this knew, and in knowing, knew that I would forget if I tried to remember, was live and in something far different from pigmented color …

because what I was could not yet handle the reality of it … yet I never (This is as close as you can tolerate. We are diverting most of the effec-

again would be the same even without remembering, except that it tive energy patterns, which are in themselves only the random residue, the occurred and the indescribable joy of knowing only that it did take place leakage as you might call it, from the fundamental. Focus through us rather and the echoes would reverberate in me throughout eternity, whatever than the outer rim. It will help.)

my eternity was … gently, I felt myself being detached from the ray, With great difficulty , I narrowed and held on the center of the form and I collapsed behind the shielding form of my INSPEC friend… .

… and I began to cool and calm down … slowly my rational and Friend? INSPEC? I realized then how provincial my percepts were. I also observing self began to emerge again, dominating the overwhelming emo-realized how limited they were … the radiating globes, the rays emitted tional surge that had enveloped me … it was as if I perceived through a

…

darkly tinted window and I had to work continually to keep the emotion (You responded very well for the initial exposure. Your human loosh/love below the threshold level, the wondrous and brilliant joy, awe, reverence, energy is transmuted into the center of what you perceive. From there it is melded into one yet with flashes of each sparking momentarily … all redirected into what you call the rays, to the points where it is needed most.

180

FAR JOURNEYS

SHOCK TREATMENT

181

When you have progressed, we can guide you to one of the destinations so the soles of my feet, the even breathing of Nancy sleeping beside me—

you can observe the results.)

that I felt the wetness of my cheeks and a few remaining tears in my eyes.

My percept was not strong enough to bring any flicker whatsoever as to And I remembered. Not much, but I remembered! I sat up in bed, what exposure to the full force of such rays might be. But my human wanting to jump up and shout in incomprehensible joy. Steamboat raised curiosity wouldn’t let the basic question go

unanswered, now that I had his head and looked at me curiously, then dropped back. My wife shifted smoothed somewhat.

position as I sat up, then gradually resumed her even breathing rhythm. I (It was created. It was always there, we have no percept of a beginning.

would not wake her, she needed her rest and recharge.

Are you ready to return now?)

I lay back and remembered. Sometime before dawn, I, too, fell asleep.

I turned inward and closed tightly.

CLICK!

… We were back again in familiar blackness, only now it seemed empty and sterile, but the INSPEC energy was still beside me … now I would have to put together a new ident for them, if they could hold up so calmly under . . .

(INSPEC will serve as well as any other.)

But I couldn't let it alone. As shaken as I was, I knew I had to ask, because I had known they were greater, but how much greater now might be a depth …

(We are created, just as you are created. More than that, it is

important that you obtain from your own percept. In your own—how do you put it? —

time, you will find the reason for this.)

Suddenly, I felt a strong, urgent signal pulling at the back of me. I resisted at first, not wanting to leave, but the signal was persistent. With the warm pattern of understanding from my INSPEC friend, I turned and followed the signal. Instantly, I was hovering over my physical body.

There below me was my second body. I slid into it easily, then into the physical. My right arm was tingling due to lack of circulation. I evidently had been lying on it at an angle. I flexed the arm several times, musing as I had so many times before: Suppose there were no signal to return, how long would I stay away, would I never return? It was then, lying there in the darkness, listening to the whippoorwill and the night crickets outside, the soft earth-scented breeze flowing in through the open window, feeling the hot warmth of our little dog Steamboat sleeping contentedly against

14. One Easy Lesson

Even then, you had trouble with his ident. I guarantee you that’s just the small part of it, he was only on his way in, he was just getting started.) He turned inward and closed. I suddenly got the percept that I had done it again. What would I do with him? He

wasn’t a stray cat or dog I could take back, feed, and find a home for. It was ludicrous. Fix him up Time: 3:40 A.M… . awake, alert, rested, relaxed … unhooked easily with a human body? How would I do that? And he certainly wasn’t going from the physical, slid out of the second immediately, and waited for a to join the line and go human via the Entry Station. Can you learn to signal. There was none, so I let go and let the total self take over. There swim without getting in the water and getting wet?

was the usual blur of movement, not too extensive, and I had the ident of I tried to ease out of it gracefully. (Maybe it’s best that you pull a skip BB close by me. My percept of him was totally different. He was tightly and go back to KT-95, let it go at that.)

closed. And dulled. The thin outer haze of the Intermediate Area made BB opened slightly. (I did. Went and came back.) him even less distinguishable.

I waited. I wasn’t going to get in deeper if I could help it. I knew he I tried to smooth casually. (Hey, old buddy, what’s up?) would go on and he did.

BB opened slightly. (Oh, hello, RAM.) (I had it you (There was a hole and the hole was empty. You ever been like that?) would he pulling skips back to KT-95.) He dulled.

I plied. (Yeah, I’ve been there. It’ll stay empty because it’s designed for (Sure.)

one curl. No other will fit in.)

I smoothed very gently. (Anything I can do for you?) (No … no.) He (AA was one smart curl, you can believe it. Too smart for his own good.

started to close. (I'm just hanging around.) He had the set of someone Look what it got him.)

who had lost his best friend, which was exactly the case from his I plied again. (It happens.)

perspective, and partially so from another— partially in that the same I was about to turn and disengage as carefully as I could, but I was too AA, when he finally emerged, would be the fundamental, with the late. I had the strong percept that he would come to some solution and it unique variegation learned from the in-human experience permanently would involve me. I was too right.

interwoven and overlaid throughout the being that he had become. It He had lighted very brightly. (You can do it!) could be construed as a loss if BB did not accept the change or (Do what?)

expected only the stasis of KT-95 that had been AA. I tried another (Feed me rotes about humans. Then I'd be ready for him.) approach. (Well, you just can't stand here forever.) BB blanked.

I flickered. (I wouldn't know where to start.) (Forever? What's that?) I flickered. (It's, uh … human expression.) He (Then show me how it works.)

vibrated. (I want nothing to do with that human action!) I put it to him (How am I going to do that? You ‘d have to be in-human …) hard and straight. (You’re going to have to get some kind of rote about (No, no, I wouldn’t,) BB cut in quickly. (You move around without a human. If you don % you won’t know your friend AA when he comes out.

physical body.)

You won’t have any ident on him whatsoever.) BB vibrated. (Sure, I will!

(Well, yes, but …)

You don’t lose things like that!) (It won’t be the same. Pick up your rote (You and me, we had a hook right from the start, RAM. Like old friends.

when you tried to pull him out.

I got a solid ident on you. So you be my Tour Guide, quick and short. How about it?)

I smoothed. (What’s it like being human in one easy lesson?) He lighted more. (That’s it, that’s it!)

That was it all right. Not quite the blind leading the blind, but close.

(Not for the deer, that's the other one, the animal … uh, the other All I could do was give him a skim over what I did have as the basics, show being. The human needs the body of the deer.) him … yes! Show! That ought to make it clear.

BB blanked. (What would he want with that? He's already got a body.) I opened. (All right. The main thing about being in-human is survival.

I smoothed, here it comes. (To survive. He needs it to eat.) That's the biggest percept of all. It drowns out about everything else for (Eat! What's eat?)

most humans.)

(He puts it in his own physical body to give it energy to survive, so he can He blanked. (What's survival.)

stay alive. That's what we ident eating.)

(Staying alive.)

(The other being, the uh, deer, it didn't survive, stay alive … uh,

(What kind of problem is that? You're alive, you stay alive.) physically. I got a good percept of the energy leaving it.) I smoothed. (Not if you're in a physical body. The imprint comes up for One easy lesson! (Well, humans are what we ident as the dominant most to mean stay alive in a physical body, no more. They use most of their species, uh, beings alive here. They are at the top of what we call the food energy trying to survive, one way or another. That's the cause of virtually all chain. Food is what we call the stuff we eat. Little species get eaten by human problems. The drive for survival is so strong it messes up everything.

bigger species which in turn get eaten by bigger species until you get up to End of lesson.)

human. He isn't the biggest but he's the smartest, that's why he's the BB rolled. (Come on, that's the wildest rote I ever had thrown at me!) dominant species. He eats about everything that grows.) (It's not so funny if you're in it. You believe it as real and nothing else.) BB was turned inward and flickering as we followed the man to the He continued to roll, and I realized there was only one way he just stone hut. The man shifted the deer carcass off his shoulder and hung it might get the idea. Show him. Take him down on the beach and watch head down on a rack outside the hide-draped doorway. Then he went the swimmers … (Come on, follow my ident.) inside.

BB lighted. (Sure, RAM!)

BB flickered. (Isn't he going to, uh, eat it?) I turned, did a half-roll, and dove down through the rings with my new (He will later. Has

to cure it a little first, let the blood drain out of it.

KT-95 friend close behind me. Never mind the big centers, get down to Want to go inside?)

the basics … that would be back from civilization, outlying physical He didn't really have a choice, as I led him through the stone wall.

areas . . . middle of Asia, yes … that would do it … I pulled to a Inside, there was a small fire burning in the center of an earthen floor.

stop just over a bleak hill with a ragged forest down one side. A man was Around the fire were three persons, a woman and two small children. The crouched in the edge of the forest. BB was beside me and I turned his woman was stirring a pot hung over the fire, the two children watching focus on the man. What looked to be a small deer was grazing in the hungrily. The man sat down and joined them, took off his heavy coat, and grasses not far from the man. The man raised a gun, took aim, and fired.

accepted the bowl the woman handed him. He started to eat, using his The deer fell, twitching its legs, and the man ran forward, pulled the fingers to pull pieces of food from the bowl and sipping from its rim. BB

deer's head back, and slashed its throat with a knife. Blood gushed out pushed at me urgently.

from the deer's throat, and it finally went limp. The man hoisted the deer (What was that he did!)

over his shoulder and moved along the edge of the woods in the direction (Right now he's eating, he's taking pieces of food and putting them into of a stone hut. We followed as BB pushed at me.

his body, and the little stuff, he just pours it in.) (That human, he killed that other being.)

(Yeh, yeh, I got that percept, it was before! He slipped off part of his I plied. (Yep.)

body!)

(Why did he do that? Not much survival going on there!) I blanked, then lighted. (That was his coat. It's not his body, it's a piece 186

of stuff he puts on to keep warm. That's the next thing in the survival need than it is to live. The strong survival drive is needed to achieve balance.

— to keep your physical body so it's warm enough or cool enough

and to That produces other problems.)

protect it from getting hurt. That's the reason for the cabin, the, uh, hut (What problems?)

we're in now. It helps protect the physical body. The fire … the, uh, (We'll get to them along the way.)

radiation in the middle, that helps them keep warm.) He focused on the couple below, who by now had completed their I had the percept that BB was focused as one would be fascinated by a sexual act and were back eating before the fire. (The two big ones are not cobra weaving its hooded head directly in front of your face. I focused on the same.)

him, trying to determine exactly what and how much of the scene was (Humans, but different. Run the rote when you caught up with AA— he penetrating him as a real rote. How do you explain warm and cold or such wanted to go back and be a female. Then the next time around, he had a simple thing as a cooking fire, or the constant attention and servicing a been a female. Humans are either male or female. It takes a male and a physical body requires, to one who has never been in one? Then BB was female to reproduce, to make a copy.)

pushing at me again.

BB turned inward, then opened. (Which are you?) (RAM, RAM!) He was vibrating strongly. (He's killing the other one!) (Male.)

I turned. The man had moved the woman back from the fire and (You ever been female?)

pushed her to the ground. He was on top of her, his body holding her (I don't have any rote on it, so I guess not.) down, arms around her tightly, hers around him. Her long rough dress was He opened more. (Nothing like this in KT-95. Never had a percept like thrown up over her hips and they were writhing violently, her open legs it, to make a copy of yourself. Fascinating!) locked around his waist. The two children were eating from the bowl, I cut in. (Well, it's not exactly a copy of yourself, it's a physical mix of totally unconcerned. Not being the voyeur type, I could be quite clinical.

the two, and you hope it might be a copy of you, but it never really turns out I smoothed. (He's not killing her. They 're, uh, reproducing.) that way. It's just a physical vehicle. The curl who enters it might be a total (What's …)

stranger.)

(They're putting their two energies together to form a third. They're BB rolled. (Don't get concerned, RAM. I'm not that fascinated.) making copies of themselves, like the smaller two there eating by the fire.

(I get a percept that stronger curls than you have been caught into being I'm sure they made those two.)

human.)

(Why would they do that?)

He smoothed. (At this point, I don't get any part of this survival stuff.

(It's the biggest part of the survival stuff. Make a copy of yourself and That would be too much for me. The eating, I can adjust to, the warm and keep on living in your copy. It's basic in all living species, not just humans.

cool. If they can do it, I can do it. The reproducing, copy making, that The rote is that you reproduce first, before you get around to eating, cold or would be fun, make a big game out of it.)

warm, whatever.)

I couldn't hold it back. (Famous last words. Come on.) (But they already made two.)

He blanked. (No percept on that one. Last words?) (That's a sort of guarantee that at least one will survive to make more I turned, went through the wall, sure that BB was following. I homed in copies. If those two young new ones die or get killed before they make on the one place that I knew would give him a strong rote on how distor-

copies, then the third they're making right now might live long enough to tion could accumulate. Ident New York, center of Manhattan, start with get copies made.)

West Forty-second Street. The movement was quite short, and we came in BB flickered. (Why would they die, or how would they get killed?) at sidewalk level. The usual evening human composites were crowding one (That's one of the problems of physical life. It's easier to die or get killed another, jostling, strolling, hurrying, and loitering. The eateries, the old 188

movie houses overplugging underdone X-rated pornos on their marquees, get all of your survival needs taken care of and more. As much as you want, the gimmick and gut shops, record stores blasting it out, the car and truck any kind you want, whenever you want. You ident it and you got it.) traffic filling the street—it hadn't really changed in thirty years, only more BB flickered. (All the, uh, food to, uh, eat?) of the same. Yes, this would show it. BB was in the middle of the passing (From the hamburger joint over there to the top of that tower over in the parade, unnecessarily ducking and trying to avoid bumping into people. I distance. Go in and they will supply you.)

steered him over to the curb, out of the rush and crush.

(The warm and the cool, the, uh, hut to stay in, the stuff you put on your He flickered. (Where 'd they all come from?)

body?)

(Crossroads of the world, they used to call it. Come from everywhere, lot (All here.)

(How about making copies, the, uh … yeh, reproducing?) of them live nearby.)

I rolled. (I suppose you could get that, too, if you looked hard enough.

(Why do they come here, this place!)

Most of it here is, uh, doing the action without making any copies.) I smoothed. (The percept is, you can find anything you want here in New BB blanked. (Why would you want to do it if you're not making copies!) York.)

I flickered. (My percept has it that the survival imprint was so strong it BB vibrated. (Still doesn't come out new to me, even down in it.) wanted to make sure each species took the trouble to reproduce. So the act (It's just the ident, that's all. But they're doing the same thing as the man of doing it was made to be, uh … fun.)

back there by the woods, every one of them. Trying to survive. Doing any-

He blanked again. (Fun! Those back there didn't act like they were thing to keep alive.)

having fun!)

BB flickered. (I don't get the same percept. And the M Band noise is I plied. (You have to be human to get that percept. It can't be handed out shaking me up too much. The scratchy stuff in the band, it's the worst!

in a rote either. Anyway, you can satisfy that part of the survival drive, too, Never got that before anywhere! Where's it all coming from?) as much as you want.)

I smoothed. (Close a little, that'll make it easier. The noise is coming BB lighted brightly. (Then what's all the mix-up about! It's all under from us humans. The scratchy stuff that screeches so much I finally figured control! Humans get what they want, there's plenty of it, each curl soaks it out. It's their emotions.)

up and goes back where he came from.)

(Emotions?)

I turned inward and closed. This was turning into a hard lesson for me, (I won't try to give you a percept on it, you have to be human to experi-

not him. I was pretty sure it wouldn't work and it wasn't. How do I convey ence it. It's the next-biggest problem after the survival drive. Makes humans to him the fact that all humans have to spend most of their waking hours do things they really don't want to do.)

working one way or another just to survive, that humans want the same He flickered, half open. (Why do they make all the noise?) thing and kill each other to get it, that they get so involved in surviving I plied. (They don't know they're doing it.)

they don't know when to stop when they have enough, that humans form big clubs they call nations and try to destroy other nations who they think He turned inward, closed. Then he opened slightly. (You're human.

threaten their survival, that the whole thing occupies their thoughts and How come you don't make M Band noise like that?) actions so deeply they forget completely any other existence but physical (I do. I just have it under control for the moment. Back in the physical, I human …

blow it all over the place, I'm sure.)

(You're leaking again, RAM,) BB cut in. (You got it right. I wouldn't get BB opened and smoothed. (All right. If you can take it, so can I. Now, a percept on any of it. What's this work stuff? You mean humans kill and what about this survival stuff?)

eat each other? What do you mean, they forget?) I spun a slow 360. (Within a short time-distance from this spot, you can 190

I did the best I could. (Work is what humans do to get money, uh, down and OOB, but I was too keyed up, I couldn't hold it together. On energy to pay, uh, give to other humans so those humans will give them about the sixth try, I fell asleep.

what they want to satisfy their survival needs.) When I awakened, it was morning. I thought of trying to get out and (Money energy, huh? Must be pretty strong stuff. I have no ident on it.) help BB, but it was the wrong time for me. I spent the day in my typical (You wouldn't. Only humans have it, and it's strictly physical. Won't pattern, with BB flashing in and out of my consciousness. This was a case work anywhere except on physical earth and with other humans. Worse where I was 100 percent responsible and I knew it. Finally, late in the than that, each group of humans, uh, nations …) afternoon, I felt tired enough to relax, and went up to the lab, entered, (The big clubs … we have game clubs in KT-95.) and locked the door. I set up some sound signals and went into the booth.

(Yes, the big clubs of humans. Each has its own type of money energy I lay back on the water bed, put on the headphones, and almost immedi-

and they trade money.)

ately started to relax. The rest was easy. I detached from the physical, BB smoothed. (So if I want a deer to eat, or a hut to be in, a cover for my rolled out of the second, started to reach, and

stopped. There was a form body to be in, I got to give money energy to get it.) directly in front of me.

(You work, you pay, and you get.)

(Hey, RAM, where you going?)

He focused on the cars moving by. (How about those covers? Can you I vibrated. (How did you get here!)

get them for money energy, too?)

BB was very smooth. (When you started to pull that short skip, I just (That's all it takes.)

followed your ident. I wasn't going to stay in all that M Band noise if you (It's too messed up for me.) BB smoothed completely. (If I had to be didn 't. Much better here.)

human, I would stay away from all the rest of it and just hang around (I should hope so.)

making copies and let it go at that… . What's so funny?) (Your survival must be going strong. You got more than one hut.) I was rolling hard and couldn't keep closed.

I flickered. (This is not a hut, it's where we work.) He blanked. (That takes money energy, too?)

(I got a solid percept of you coming out of the physical body there.

That I plied. (One way or another.)

yours?)

Suddenly, I felt an urgent signal to return to the physical, loud and I vibrated. (Certainly it's mine! I don't go into other people s bodies.) clear. I tried to resist it, and worked to get BB's attention at the same (Why not?)

time. I had to go back, but I couldn't leave him where he was, he wouldn't I flickered. (Well, uh, it's against the rules.) know how to get out … but the signal was too strong and I couldn't (What rules?)

help myself. I began to move away, slowly as I resisted, then accelerating (I don't know, it doesn 't, uh, the percept is, you don't do it. I don't think quickly as I decided to go back and see what the problem was and return I could if I wanted to.)

as fast as I could. I reached the second, slipped in fast, and pulled up into (You do a lot of turning and twisting when you come out, you know.) the physical. I sat up in the bed and looked around. Everything seemed I plied. (I don't have a percept from outside watching me in action.) normal, no full bladder, no tingle in an arm or leg from poor circulation, (We do much the same back in KT-95 in a game we play. Gets us in and no aches or pains. Must have been external, phone ringing, jet aircraft out of the system over us. Hey, what are all those curls doing in that big hut overhead, whatever, it wasn't important. I immediately remembered BB, over there?)

and I had the thought of him standing bewildered on the curb at Forty-I vibrated. (You didn't go over there, did you?) second and Broadway. I went through a quick relaxation to try to get BB smoothed. (Just hung around a little. Couldn't get your attention, so 192

FAR JOURNEYS

ONE EASY LESSON

193

/ had to do something. Tossed a couple of rotes to one or two. They were through each passerby without realizing he is damaging or hurting no one.

glad to get them. What they doing?)

The unshaven old man at the open bar across the street, trying to pick up (They are trying to break the survival habit … and to relearn what they and toss down every drink set in front of a customer, then climbing on a forgot. It's a school.)

customer's back to try and get the taste and effect of the drink as the (I don't get any percept you need a school to do that.) I turned. (You customer feels it, unnoticed and to no avail. I turned to BB. (Had need the rest of your one easy lesson.) I reached and stretched, headed enough?) He flickered strongly. (What's the matter with them?) (They've for the lowest of the cycling rings, staying just out of phase with the died physically and they don't

know it. All they remember is human physical. This was the part that was the rough stuff but I was sure we physical existence and they're trying to hang on. That's all they got, they would be ignored and unmolested if we stayed just on the upper think.)

fringes. I didn't look forward to it. For purposes of comparison, I used (Can't you give them a different percept?)

the same Forty-second Street ident in New York. It was a short run and I smoothed. (If you mean me, I have to have help when I get into that we came out fifty feet over the street. BB was beside run. There are others who make a career of it.) BB blanked. (Career?) me.

(That's all they do, try to get the attention of such humans. Would you He smoothed. (Back here again. No difference, except a big mass more like to get a percept of an extreme distortion of the survival drive?) He of humans.)

flickered. (Sure, lead on.)

(Focus on the ones that you perceive best.)

I knew he was shaken, but I had to push him all the way. Then I could be BB opened, and evidently the change in the superimposed mass was positive he would appreciate the outer rings. I reached, homed on ident apparent to him. The man rushing out from the curb to flag a taxi and sexual pile, and stretched. After a short movement, we stopped. We were running through it, and stopping bewildered as car after car passed less than ten feet away. Beside

me, BB focused, blanked, and closed. I through the space he seemed to occupy. The thin young male in long hair, waited, and he finally opened again slightly. I focused away from the pile who looked to be no more than eighteen, trying to get the attention of the of writhing human forms and half-closed. It was about all I could take.

young group leaning against a parked car, asking for a hit from the joint BB vibrated weakly. (What happened to them!)

being passed around but unable to get their attention because they can't (They've died physically and they at least know they're different, not see or hear him. The burly policeman in full uniform swinging his night-

responsible, they think, so they're letting it all hang out.) (But, uh, what stick, strolling along the storefronts totally unaware that he is unobserved.

are they doing, like that?)

The smartly dressed woman of indeterminate age trying to find a coin for (They have no interest but reproducing, not to make copies, but just the a newspaper in her purse as she unknowingly walks through the side of a act of reproducing. That's all they know and all they care about. They keep nearby building. The older man trying to buy the offerings of two young trying but get no satisfaction because it takes a physical body the way they hookers standing by a doorway leading upstairs, angry because they don't know it— and they don't have any.)

know he exists, watches as a physical man steps up, waves a double saw-BB attempted to focus again, and turned away. (Let's get out of here.) buck in one girl's face as she turns and leads him up the stairs; the first I wanted his rote to be absolutely real. (Convinced?) (Yeh, yeh, let's man following. The old woman walking slowly along the street, oblivious go.)

to everything around her, reaching down occasionally to the sidewalk and I reached and stretched outward, positive he was close behind me, attempting to pick up a half-smoked cigarette snipe, but her hand passes moved slowly outward. We passed through the density of still gray forms through it. The dark-skinned man standing defiantly in the middle of the passing crowds, intense hate on his face and knife in hand, slashing 194

who were neither here nor there, barely conscious and waiting for some-

Would have enjoyed one more dinner at Luigi's, never get seafood like that thing to happen—and it would, all positive. Very little M Band noise again …)

there. I eased us to a stop in the center of the next-innermost ring. There BB swung to me. (He's closed up tight. We can't reach him?)

were forms all around us, very human. Each was aware and active in a I plied. (Go ahead and try.)

tight circle that included only their own rote.

He moved directly in front of the man, tossing small rotes at the man's BB nudged me. (Why you stopping here? Noise is still heavy.) face. Each time, the man waved his hand as if he were brushing a persis-I opened. (There's a big difference. These know they no longer have tent fly off his nose. Other than that, there was no response. BB finally physical bodies, but not much more. Focus in on a couple, and you'll get a gave up and followed as I turned and moved outward through the haze of percept.)

the ring. It was hard for me to accept now that I had once been as deeply BB turned and faced a woman who seemed to be walking in slow focused in HTSI, but I was sure it was so. If my rote of it was there, it was motion, in one place. She appeared middle-aged, overweight, tears run-deeply covered over. I like to think I released it, of course.

ning down her face … (I'm sorry, I'm sorry, Mommy didn't mean to One more stop before we reached the null point should do it. When leave you, baby doll, but she just couldn't help it, but I'm coming back, I'm the haze began to lessen somewhat, I came to a stop. A woman was coming back to help you just as soon as I can … I'm coming back standing amid what seemed to be jagged rock outcrop. She was aware of somehow …)

us immediately and began to scream. BB started to back away.

I indicated a man who looked to be in his sixties, pacing back and forth The woman came at us, waving her arms. (You stay away from me, you rapidly, pounding his fist in the palm of his other hand … BB

spawn of the devil! I was a sinner, but I didn't sin any more than everyone refocused … (Damn, damn, damn! Just when I had it all set up to go else, I tell you! You can't take me to hell, because I'm a good woman! You out and enjoy myself. Damn! Now she'll spend it all on clothes and trips go after those harlots down on Front Street!) everywhere and I'm left out. Got to get back somehow, got to get what's She stopped abruptly, sank to her knees, head bowed, sobbing. (Please coming to me. Damn! Damn! …)

don't take me to hell … Please! I just want to be with my daughter.

We turned in the direction of a man who appeared to be sitting down, She's around here somewhere, she was so good. She couldn't help dying indeterminate age, slowly shaking his head from side to side, staring before me. I know she didn't go to hell … Please, please!) blindly … (Never got a chance to tell her I didn't mean to beat her up. I I did what I could. (Your daughter was good. If you just rest quietly, she was drunk, I was drunk, that's all. What a hell of a note. What am I going will come and find you. Think of her, sit quietly and think of her, and she to do now? I knew that turn in the road was coming … There' s got to be will find you. What was her name?)

something I can do …)

The woman's sobbing eased, but her head remained bowed and she was A thin young girl in blue jeans attracted our attention. Hands on her unable to think clearly. I did get a percept. (Claire will find you very soon.) hips, she was looking around defiantly … (Shit! Is that all there is to The woman slowly raised her head, eyes open in wonder as I turned and dying! I don't see any God or angels … I knew it, knew it! Shit!) led BB further outward through the haze.

We moved carefully around the various animate human forms, singled BB came beside me. (You sure swung that one, RAM.) out another, a man of middle age, gray-haired, standing and looking at the I plied. (Beginner's luck.)

haze, arms folded … (Well, I did the best I could. Left them money in He blanked. (What's …)

the bank, house in good shape, insurance will take care of the mortgage.

(More human stuff. Come on.)

Right front tire on the station wagon needs replacing. Hope Ben will take Sometimes my navigation wasn't as good as I would like it to be. We care of the contract on the Holmes deal. Company is going to miss me.

finally broke through the haze into a cleared area. This was my intended 196

stopping point. To the right, the surf of a white-capped blue ocean Charlie turned to me. (You taught him the OOB routine. Now you have crashed regularly against a rocky shore. Overhead, the sky was a lighter a traveling companion. That's great!)

blue with no clouds. In front of us was a simple log cabin, and behind the I smoothed. (Not exactly, Charlie. You see …) cabin rose a forested mountain. It could be either Maine or California, but (You will have to teach him to fine-tune a little better, Robert. I can't get even a clear outline, just something like heat distortion on the desert. You it wasn't. It wasn't anything.

still hear me, uh, BB?)

(Hey, why we stopping?) BB cut in.

BB must have pulled a percept from Charlie, who was wide open.

(Ident Charlie. A friend of mine. Try it.)

(Loud and clear, Charlie. Zero level, plus or minus three DB.) He did, and I knew what was happening. All I was perceiving suddenly Charlie looked pleased. (That's my language, BB! At least I hear you.

came into BB, the ocean, the shore, cabin, sky, and mountain. He flick-

Say, how do you like what I've done here? Took some doing to get the ocean ered. (We back on your earth?)

waves to hit the rocks accurately, I tell you. Hey, Robert, you like sunsets.

I smoothed. (No, Charlie made it.)

Watch this one.)

BB blanked. (Charlie made it!)

We turned and looked out over the ocean. Slowly, the light blue sky (He likes to be reminded of his favorite physical place, so he made a darkened, and flares of red, orange, and yellow melded together on the copy.)

horizon. Layers of clouds appeared which added perspective and texture to (He can do that?)

the scene. The edges of the clouds took on rose and mauve hues. It (It's like a rote, almost.)

reminded me of Oahu in Hawaii.

The door of the cabin opened, and Charlie came out. He was his usual Charlie turned to me. (How's that for a first draft?) short,

round-bodied, round-faced self and wearing his usual plaid shirt. His I explained to BB. (Charlie was an electronics engineer in his last physi-

hair was dark and straight this time instead of his usual tight blond curls.

cal life.)

He approached and we shook hands. (Well, Robert, I see you got out (I thought I was pretty good,) Charlie added. (That was nothing com-again.)

pared to what you can do here. What's your field, BB? You work with Robert?)

(Hi, Charlie. What happened to your hair?)

BB flickered. (I'm from KT-95.)

Charlie flickered. (I, uh, got a new friend. She likes it straight and brown, Charlie looked puzzled. (KT-95? New one on me. Where's the company so I changed it. She's in the cabin. Want to meet her?) located?)

(We just stopped by for a minute. Next time maybe.) I decided to give it to him straight. (He's not from earth, Charlie. He He looked in BB's direction. (You got somebody with you?) isn't even human.)

I smoothed. (Yeah, a friend.)

He looked taken aback, but only for a moment. (Now, come on,

you’re He stared intently. (I can just barely see the edges of something.) not going to start that kind of talk again!)

(Say hello to BB.)

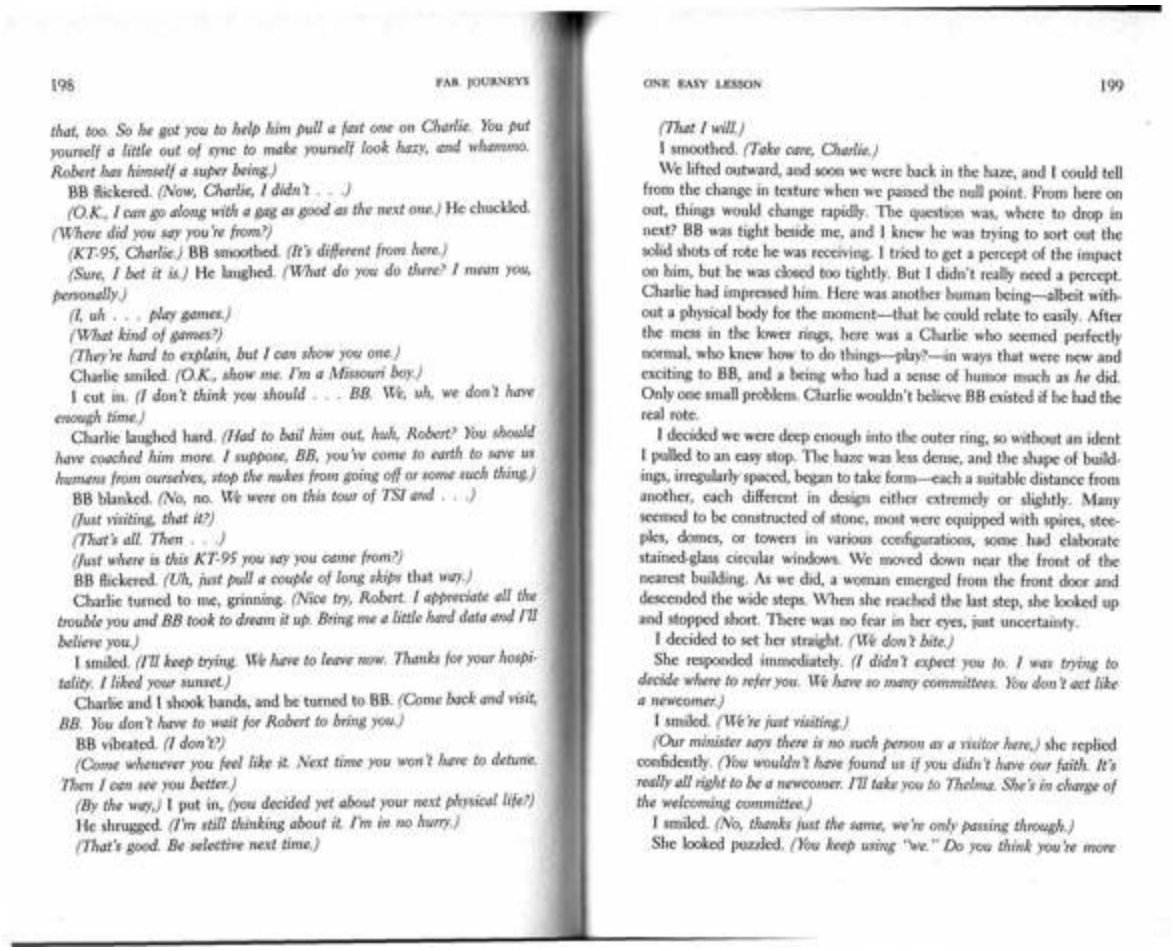
I laughed. (He’s for real, Charlie.)

Charlie looked dubious. (I can’t see you, but hello, BB. Welcome to He turned to where he perceived BB stood. (Robert has been feeding Fantasy Land.)

me all these wild ideas about other worlds, energy fields we know nothing BB flickered. (Uh, hello, Charlie.)

about, that type of thing. I can go along with him as to possible intelligent Surprise crossed Charlie’s face. (I heard him! I heard him but I can’t see life on other planets somewhere beyond our solar system, but that’s not him!)

what he means. Human life, even operating the way I am now, I can handle BB rolled a little. (I get you fine, Charlie!)



198 FAR JOURNEYS

that, too. So he got you to help him pull a fast one on Charlie. You put yourself a little out of sync to make yourself look hazy, and whammo. Robert has himself a super being.)

BB flickered. *(Now, Charlie, I didn't . . .)*

(O.K., I can go along with a gag as good as the next one.) He chuckled. *(Where did you say you're from?)*

(KT-95, Charlie.) BB smoothed. *(It's different from here.)*

(Sure, I bet it is.) He laughed. *(What do you do there? I mean you, personally.)*

(I, uh . . . play games.)

(What kind of games?)

(They're hard to explain, but I can show you one.)

Charlie smiled. *(O.K., show me. I'm a Missouri boy.)*

I cut in. *(I don't think you should . . . BB. We, uh, we don't have enough time.)*

Charlie laughed hard. *(Had to bail him out, huh, Robert? You should have coached him more. I suppose, BB, you've come to earth to save us humans from ourselves, stop the nukes from going off or some such thing.)*

BB blanked. *(No, no. We were on this tour of TSI and . . .)*

(Just visiting, that it?)

(That's all. Then . . .)

(Just where is this KT-95 you say you came from?)

BB flickered. *(Uh, just pull a couple of long skips* that *way.)*

Charlie turned to me, grinning. *(Nice try, Robert. I appreciate all the trouble you and BB took to dream it up. Bring me a little hard data and I'll believe you.)*

I smiled. *(I'll keep trying. We have to leave now. Thanks for your hospitality. I liked your sunset.)*

Charlie and I shook hands, and he turned to BB. *(Come back and visit, BB. You don't have to wait for Robert to bring you.)*

BB vibrated. *(I don't?)*

(Come whenever you feel like it. Next time you won't have to detune. Then I can see you better.)

(By the way,) I put in, *(you decided yet about your next physical life?)*

He shrugged. *(I'm still thinking about it. I'm in no hurry.)*

(That's good. Be selective next time.)

ONE EASY LESSON 199

(That I will.)

I smoothed. *(Take care, Charlie.)*

We lifted outward, and soon we were back in the haze, and I could tell from the change in texture when we passed the null point. From here on out, things would change rapidly. The question was, where to drop in next? BB was tight beside me, and I knew he was trying to sort out the solid shots of rote he was receiving. I tried to get a percept of the impact on him, but he was closed too tightly. But I didn't really need a percept. Charlie had impressed him. Here was another human being—albeit without a physical body for the moment—that he could relate to easily. After the mess in the lower rings, here was a Charlie who seemed perfectly normal, who knew how to do things—play?—in ways that were new and exciting to BB, and a being who had a sense of humor much as *he* did. Only one small problem. Charlie wouldn't believe BB existed if he had the real rote.

I decided we were deep enough into the outer ring, so without an ident I pulled to an easy stop. The haze was less dense, and the shape of buildings, irregularly spaced, began to take form—each a suitable distance from another, each different in design either extremely or slightly. Many seemed to be constructed of stone, most were equipped with spires, steeples, domes, or towers in various configurations, some had elaborate stained-glass circular windows. We moved down near the front of the nearest building. As we did, a woman emerged from the front door and descended the wide steps. When she reached the last step, she looked up and stopped short. There was no fear in her eyes, just uncertainty.

I decided to set her straight. *(We don't bite.)*

She responded immediately. *(I didn't expect you to. I was trying to decide where to refer you. We have so many committees. You don't act like a newcomer.)*

I smiled. *(We're just visiting.)*

(Our minister says there is no such person as a visitor here,) she replied confidently. *(You wouldn't have found us if you didn't have our faith. It's really all right to be a newcomer. I'll take you to Thelma. She's in charge of the welcoming committee.)*

I smiled. *(No, thanks just the same, we've only passing through.)*

She looked puzzled. *(You keep using "we." Do you think you're more*

200

FAR JOURNEYS

ONE EASY LESSON

201

than one person? We have a class on multiple personalities that you can else. After that, we don’t see them again. They’re gone when the rest of us attend. Dr. Frankel conducts it.)

leave. It’s a, uh, ritual our church conducts here.) BB cut in. (Why

can’t she perceive me, RAM? Charlie did.) I took it as far as I could. (Do they finally go to heaven?) She was very She smiled at me. (What did you … Oh. Your name is Percy RAM

open and clear. (Most of our congregation think so. Dr. Fortune is Charles?)

ambivalent about it. At the close of each service, he issues something like (Not exactly,) I answered. It was interesting. She was mixing BB’s radia-

the call that the Reverend Wilson did back in physical life. People get up, tion with mine to fit her percept.

walk down to the front of the church, and there he says something to them (Isn’t it wonderful to know, really know you have everlasting life?) She the rest of us can’t hear. Then we sing a hymn, and they march out.) stretched her arms outward from her side. (Oh, I remember so well how I (What do you yourself think? Where are they going?) She hesitated. (I don’t felt when I died and they brought me here. How I harbored little secret know. Things are so different here from what I expected and I’ve learned doubts, and I do understand how you feel. Sunday school and the reindoc- so much . . . I just haven’t made up my mind.) Then she laughed. (But trination classes will clear those up for you. Don’t worry. It’s just unusual you’re asking me questions. The welcoming committee are the people you that you arrived here on your own.)

need. I’ll take you over to … Wait a minute, where are you going?) I had to ask it for BB’s sake. He was focused very intently on what

was (We, uh, I have to leave now.) I called out to her as we moved upward, taking place. (Then this isn't heaven? This isn't where God is?) (See you in heaven, I hope!)

She laughed lightly. (That's exactly what I asked when I was a new-

She stood and gazed in wonderment as we moved out, and I finally lost her comer. Don't be disappointed. We're only at the gates of heaven. Our in the haze. I've often been curious as to her reporting of our visit—if she minister, Dr. Fortune, preaches sermons about it every Sunday. I must did. We moved slowly as I tried to plan a suitable stop for the last part of confess they're quite different from the ones Reverend Wilson used to the lesson. I was glossing and skipping over so much that I was unsure as preach back when I was living physically, in Lexington.) to the value of the entire trip. This was no job for a neophyte, and I (Are you going back?)

certainly was just that when it came to quick, easy lessons. I was still too She frowned. (You mean back into a physical life?) human myself. BB gave me the answer when he pushed at me. (Hey, I smoothed. (I guess that's what I mean.)

RAM, we going to heaven now?)

She was thoughtful for a moment. (I don't know. Dr. Fortune has ser-

I rolled a little, then smoothed. (Not yet. I have the percept I

couldn’t if I mons about it. He says when you leave here, you can go back again or you wanted to.)

can go somewhere else.)

(Then how about where there are humans who will toss a few rotes with BB cut in. (You get that, RAM? This, uh, Fortune curl found himself a me, not you? This is supposed to be my lesson and all I do is hang around, solid percept!)

you know what I mean? Let’s go back to Charlie.) I turned to BB. (That’s right.)

I didn’t reply, but the percept flared brightly, and I began moving The woman was staring at me. (You mumble your words, don’t you? Yes, rapidly. I was positive where our last visit should take place. I led us to the I think Dr. Fortune’s perception is right. But he’s a man, not a girl.) very outer fringes of the outermost ring, where the haze was quite thin.

I persisted. (Then people do leave here?)

The rim had a glow to it as we approached, and as we entered, the glow She smiled. (Oh yes. We lose several of our congregation every Sunday.

broke down into soft individual light sources, those who resided here.

Dr. Fortune says it’s all right.)

These were the teachers, the helpers, the so-called guides of the inner (What happens to them, do you know?)

(They get up after services and walk out the front door ahead of everyone 202

FAR JOURNEYS

ONE EASY LESSON

203

rings—all on temporary but dedicated duty. I had one ident in particular (Good questions.)

and I homed in on it, with BB following. It was only moments later that BB vibrated. (Where's the fun! Why play a game if you don't have fun we eased to a stop. One form broke away from a group and approached us.

playing it! All those humans in there, I didn't get a percept of just one It was only slightly humanoid in shape, glowing softly.

having fun.)

I opened. (I took you at your word, Bill. We've come visiting.) Bill plied. (They do part of the time, and some but not many most of the The form smoothed. (We were expecting you, Bob, and this is your time, and very few all of the time, but they're hard to find. Your broad friend from KT-95. Welcome, BB.)

percept missed these fine edges.)

BB Bickered. (Uh, hello.)

BB flickered. (There's one other thing.)

It was no surprise that Bill was aware of BB and the whole sequence of (Yes?)

events. I sometimes get the dim percept that my entire adventure, includ-

(This other part that messes up the M Band so badly … the scratchy ing this one, had been neatly planned from the beginning. Thus, I let Bill stuff. RAM called it emotion. I don't have the least percept of that. He puts and BB get it together and they did.

it I have to be human.)

BB began it. (You're human like RAM here?)

(Emotion is the points, the score.)

Bill rolled a little. (I have a solid mass of human rote, BB. I've been BB blanked, and I waited for Bill to lay this one out. I would like to through the mill, as it were. But at this point, I don't have a physical body know, too.

as Bob does.)

Bill went on. (Emotion is what makes the game seem so wild, but it is (You want a rote from me? What I am and that stuff?) the game, the one game in which all other games are played. The others (That's not necessary. I have a fine percept of you, your friend, uh, AA, feed score to the big game in the form of emotional energy. The big game is and KT-95. What I would like is your percept of the human experience to control and develop this emotional energy to its most effective condition, with your one easy lesson.)

which is vaguely set by us humans as love, until we graduate. The more we BB flickered. (It's uh, not too solid. You sure you want it?) score, the more fun it becomes. Most of us here— where you are now— we Bill smoothed. (Just as it is.)

spend our energy going in to help other humans, however and wherever we (Yeh. Well, uh … it's the wildest bunch of games inside of games can, to improve their score— and so have more fun.)

… With, uh, rules on top of rules that get so mixed up you don't have BB turned inward and closed. Finally he opened again. (Uh, Bill?) any percept at all of which game you're playing. Then they get so busy (Yes, BB?)

playing so many games they forget it is a game, the whole thing. Even why BB flickered. (I don't have any percept of this emotion and love energy they're playing it and how they got in it to start.) stuff. Not a single skim.)

(That is very well put, BB.)

Bill vibrated gently. (Of course you do.)

(Why, I could take the rote I got, just what I got, the real rote, go back to BB blanked. (I do?)

KT-95, and feed it out one after another, each part as a game, and keep (Why are you here now? Why did you take the trouble to come back those curls back there skipping so fast they would spin out.) from KT-95? Why have you been … hanging around? Why did you (I'm sure you could.)

want to go through this one easy lesson with Bob? Why not just go back to BB flickered. (But there's some missing parts … and, uh, the game KT-95 and play some games?)

isn't any game without it.)

BB blanked completely, then slowly turned inward and closed tightly.

Bill was very smooth. (Such as …)

There wasn't the slightest radiation or movement in him that I could (How do they keep score! Who does the keeping!) perceive. Bill reached out gently, but BB gave no response. I had never

"

been present when anything remotely like this had happened to anyone 15. Promised

nonphysical, except those in the stunned-out ring right after physical death—and I hadn't ever watched the start of the condition in that case. I Plan

began to vibrate.

Bill opened gently. (You 'd better go back now. We'll take care of him.) I vibrated more. (Will he be all right?)

(It's a big rote he's absorbing. The fact that he's never been human makes it … different. He'II be fine.)

Time: 2:32 A.M.… . awakened with full physical awareness, felt the faI began to think that I never should have taken BB on the tour, when miliar INSPEC signal, soft, not insistent, but there … feeling of relaxed Bill cut in. (Bob, I was the one who gave him the rote that put him down.

confidence … went into short focusing routine, then unhooked from He's in the equivalent of what we used to call shock. Head back now, your the physical, then the second … much like doing two slow half-rolls in energy is weakening. We will take good care of BB. He will recover.) an airplane … homed in on the ident, and

with very little sense of I turned reluctantly, did a half-roll, and dove down, following the ident movement, I was with them at our usual point of meeting. I knew now of my physical body. I was relaxed and sure because there was no better that I would never go beyond this point again, into where they are, until I help for BB than Bill and his friends, except perhaps the INSPECS—and had fully released my physical body. Even with the compelling attraction the line between the two was very, very thin. I picked up the second and that the knowledge of it evoked, I believed I could handle it, at least for reentered the physical without incident. Everything was calm and normal, now.

except that I forgot to check the clock.

(We enjoy your human terms. Handle, as you use it, does not imply a I kept thinking about the thin line in the weeks and months that point of grasp for your physical appendage, but capability to act properly.

followed.

Therefore we do learn from you.)

I still found it hard to imagine their learning anything of significant value from me, but if THEY felt that way, fine.

(We learn much of importance from and through you, Ashaneen.)
I still remember the first time I became aware that I didn't have to form questions, how disconcerting it was that THEY perceived every thought that I had, including questions before I got a chance

to ask. It all smoothed out when I accepted the fact that whatever I thought, believed, responded to emotionally, was just being human and no judgment was passed therefrom. What a joyous freedom!

(Yet you would not know of it as a freedom if you had not experienced the repression.)

Yes, the comparative factor seems always to apply. Without it, perhaps there can be no change or at least the awareness.

(At this point, we believe you are ready for another awareness. You may now appreciate the prospect of what you are attempting to perform in your present time. It is not to state that you alone may bring into earth reality 206

FAR JOURNEYS

PROMISED PLAN

207

such prospect. Yours is hut a small part of a whole that may come into got cleaned up. Good! No more repeaters. But it was the new feature that being, aided and supported by many, many others who contribute their pulled my focus and wouldn’t let it go. Around the earth was a single flat small parts, just as you are doing. However, with your effort in your present ring, much like the ones around Saturn, and it was radiating and sparkling, time, you can complete your portion and you can return home, only to not from the reflection of the sun, but from its own internal source.

return and share in the fruits of what you are propounding when they have (You will understand fully the meaning of the ring as we progress.) matured. These fruits are what we are about to show you.) As we moved around, not through, the sparkling ring and headed in-Their use of the term "home" brought a surge of nostalgic yearning, ward, I became aware of another change. The M Band was full of commu-and I turned inward and closed. Echoing through me came the fragments nication, but no noise. No noise! That could mean only one thing—man of the rote I could never totally express—the serenity, complete feeling of had finally got it together. Further evidence was the lack of the haze M

belonging, to recall the vitality I had forgotten, the crisp, warming clarity Band noise creates. No more random thought-clutter. This at least gave of … and yet it was not quite right. Something was missing, too deeply me a beginning percept of what I might expect.

hidden, or had I … I opened.

We came into a low altitude, at about eight thousand feet, and began (We thought it might be important to you. We can show you this as an circling the earth over the northern hemisphere, east to west near a 28-

observer, not as a participant.)

degree latitude just a few miles off the coast of what appeared to be Japan.

Even as I vibrated, I blanked. If THEY planned it, it must be

something The seas were soft light green, and gentle swells some ten feet from big, but I couldn't read them as THEY did me. What …

trough to crest moved majestically over the surface. Deeper, I could per-

(We can escort you to a physical earth possibility at a point in your time ceive schools of fish leisurely weaving along, not too fast, their track measurement beyond the year 3000. The principal inhabitants are what we matching neatly the contour of the distant coastline—thousands of them, call H-plus, humans-plus, to indicate modification from those in your pres-

silver sides flashing as they made their quick changes in direction. There ent time. As you are now, you will be a visitor.) had indeed been changes if they schooled so closely to the shore, so many Well! So that was it! I had made only a few visits into future time. I of them. It was familiar, yet there was a missing element. I scanned the would never have the guts to try such a jump by myself, but with ocean surface and knew immediately what it was.

them …

No ships. I reached out along the horizon and far beyond. Not even a (Close tightly. It will be better that way.)

rowboat or dinghy. I scanned overhead across the sky with its streets of My excitement was great and my vibrating reflected it, so I turned white cumulus clouds. No aircraft, just gulls and terns

sweeping and inward, folded it all back in a loop, and closed. This would be the real rote, not the projections and imaginings of those looking at the small trends searching among the heavy swells, and higher than that, beyond cloud which always …

base—nothing. No jet contrails, no jets.

Then we had crossed the coastline and were over Japan. Off to the CLICK!

north was Fujiyama, a white cone glistening in the sun. Below us was a neat carpet of tidy fields in large checkerboard squares, each a subtle shade We were high above the earth, much as one would perceive it from of green—correction: much more than greens. Spotted among the green halfway to the moon, which was still there, behind us. The earth was the like a gigantic bouquet were clusters of fields each of a different color, one same blue-green color, with white covers of clouds partially obscuring the a mass of bright orange, another deep blue, whites, reds—fields of bloom-land below. We moved in steadily, and I was happy to see that the deep ing flowers, bushes, and evidently hybrids of the two, because no flower gray and brown rings were no longer there—which meant the blockage could be that large. It was a pattern that could be seen only from high 208

overhead, yet there were no aircraft—and that began to give me another (You can move through it and out the other side. It is no different now.) faint percept.

The ridge was almost upon us. I closed tightly just as we were about to As we moved west, I became aware of other missing signs. There were crash. There was a slight change in the texture around me momentarily, no roads, not so much as a lane to service the fields. Also, no buildings, no and it was gone. I opened, and scanned behind us. The high range was houses, no barns, no sheds —I scanned in all directions and there were fading in the distance. Passing through physical matter is not yet my none. No cities, no towns, no villages, no power lines, no cars and trucks, habit! Quickly, the earth below was beginning to level out again, the color no bicycles—all gone. The air was clear and clean, no smoke or smog.

of the forest changed into lighter greens, and the cleared areas became Then I had a flashing percept. There were no people. That was what I larger. I tried to remember my geography—we were over the Middle East, actually was looking for—men, women, children. What terrible catastro-I thought … yes, there they were coming up, still the rolling, sandy, phe took them all away!

near-desert areas, where the oil came from. I scanned in all directions, and (They are there. They are fewer in number, but it was not an event that saw very symmetrical clusters of trees, but no tanks, no pipelines, no made it so. What you perceive is by design.)

pumping wellheads, nothing to indicate man had ever set foot in the area.

We began to move more rapidly, westward, across the unending array of Either the oil fields were pumped dry or there was no longer a need for oil.

colored bouquets set in green, some so large they appeared to be many (Both percepts are accurate.)

miles in width, and soon we were again over water, the Sea of Japan, as I We moved out over water again—Mediterranean Sea? —and higher, remembered it, and still no ships on what once was such an important faster, a scrap of land blinked by underneath which I could not identify and more water, heavy waves, this must be the Atlantic … land again, transportation route. Back over land again—the Korean peninsula?—and a sudden slowing and we landed gently in a field of grass amid rolling hills.

the pattern was different. In every direction were tall and stately trees I looked around me, wondering why we had stopped at this particular with close upward-turned branches, of a species unfamiliar to me …

place. It was very faintly familiar. I was standing on a knoll, in a field of but again no sign of human artifact to indicate Kilroy had been anywhere rich green grass whose blades were so even they must have been recently near the place.

mowed … no, not cut, they were growing evenly. The edge of a

woods (Your percept is— how do you call it? — obsolete.) of oak trees, limbs spreading broadly, rose behind me. In the far distance, Before I had a chance to turn inward on that one, we were over water a series of ascending green-blue ridges formed giant stair steps upward again, moving even faster, and back over land. This would have to be

… Why stop here, why at this place?

China. Surely with its teeming millions, some had to be visible. Evidently (It is their wish. They are expecting you.)

they didn't have to be at all. We swept over mile after mile of deep green The INSPEC energy faded and I was alone. I seemed very physical as I forests broken only by occasional grassy clearings and wide rivers and stood there. I could feel the sun on my face. Light, cool breezes ruffled my streams. Where are the rice paddies so vital to human sustenance?

hair. Hair? I wasn't supposed to have … They were expecting me? I (There are a few, but for a different purpose. Bird sanctuaries.) scanned in all directions, but with no ident, no, no, there is one, and it's The land below became more rugged, and soon we were skimming very, very familiar … over in the woods. I turned and walked …

between the ranges and peaks of very mountainous terrain. Vegetation was walked? … that inferred legs. I looked down and I did indeed have sparse, and snowcaps flashed by as we passed at what seemed Mach 2

legs, very normal and very human, bare legs and bare feet, and I could feel speed, or greater. I would be more comfortable with a little safer altitude; the grass in my toes as I walked. I touched the rest of me as I headed for my old half-bold pilot experience was coming out. Being half-bold had let the large oaks, my body was physically real and warm under my fingers. I me grow old but not gracefully. The sheer snow-laden rocky side of a high glanced down, and it was my body as a bean pole twenty-two years old ridge came rushing at us.

210

FAR JOURNEYS

PROMISED PLAN

211

… hah! No clothes! That's some kind of progress. Now I could feel the BB opened wide. (He was sure eager to meet you in person. He was so soft wind against my body, the air in my lungs as I breathed. It was the eager he forgot about the barrier. But he's getting percepts.) first time that I could remember that I experienced a fully operational (Does he know what the barrier is?)

physical body in this state of consciousness. But I don't see why I had to BB smoothed. (Yeh, he knows. But he told me you have to find out for go all the way back to a skinny six-foot, one-thirty-seven-pounder … I yourself.)

reached the edge of the woods and started to enter, when I ran into a I turned to the woman, no longer able to resist the enormous pull she barrier, something that threw me back into the field. I stopped and knowingly or unknowingly was exerting upon me … her smile told me looked, but my percept showed nothing. The familiar ident I couldn't it was the former, but she was closed tightly and I respected the signal.

associate with anything was behind the barrier, so I tried again. It gave a Like BB's, her ident was strong, far stronger … but it was fuzzy. How little, but no more—and the invisible force itself was familiar yet I could I forget such a vital, important …

couldn't connect the ident and the barrier. Something was missing.

Her smile was mischievous. (You don't.)

(You can stay in the grass and we will join you there.) (Well, what do you want to know first?) BB cut in. (I could run you my No sound, it was NVC! We made it! Humans did it! We made the rote but it might not be what you want.)

quantum jump from monkey chatter and all it implied! I was eager to I turned to BB. (Exactly what year is it?)

meet the welcoming committee, whoever they were. I didn't have to wait (Year? Oh … time. They gave up that kind of measuring somewhere but a moment. A man and a woman came out from under the trees and after they reached the 3000 mark. Didn't need it anymore. What next?) stood in front of me. At least that nice

polarity hadn’t changed. Both I flickered. (Where are we? I know from the way we traveled on our appeared to be in their late twenties, attractive, well formed, skin a suntan approach that we’re just inside the United States near the coastline.) color, the man’s hair light brown, the woman’s dark. They smiled as I BB smoothed. (AA thought this would be where you would like to come inspected them.

first. Not the United States any longer. No states or countries anywhere.

I opened. (Well, I guess we haven’t changed as much as I thought we Don’t need them. But you ought to get a percept on this particular place.) would. Not physically, anyway.)

I turned and scanned around me. It was familiar. The knoll where we (Sorry about the mix-up, RAM.) The man rolled. (Your host forgot about were standing, the rising tiers of blue-tinted ridges to the west … Blue the barrier, so we’re taking his place.)

ridges! The percept was total. How many times before had I stood on this I blanked. (You must know me with that RAM stuff.) very knoll and looked to the west, had made the stairway of rounded hills The man warmed. (Yeh!)

my launching chute, the flood of living human experience I had attached (And you’re sure a familiar one to me. The ident is fuzzy. The way it to this spot, this site … the houses, fences, buildings, roads, all were comes out I know it’s not right.)

gone. The lake. The lake was still there. And trees, so many more trees The man vibrated and rolled. (Not in a thousand years would you believe and of varieties I had never seen before, and to the east, there was . .

it! It's more than a thousand, so now you better believe it!) water. Water where once was a four-lane highway, water stretching off I had a bright flashing percept, and I didn't believe it. (BBl) into the horizon.

BB rolled. (Who else!)

(We call it Virginia Bay for old times' sake. Part of the ocean.) BB was I turned inward and found the rotes that had percepts on the barrier, very smooth. (You always yelled about the law of change. Some of us hibe where it had repelled me before, and I knew who my host was to have here also for old times' sake.)

been. (That's AA back in the trees.)

I blanked. (Hibe?)

The woman opened ever so slightly. (We store our favorite human bod-

unusual. AA must have instructed him to let the woman do the talking—

ies here under the oak trees until we need them.) correction: communicating.

(Which is not too often,) BB added.

I tried another direction. (On the way in, I didn't see a single house or I turned inward. Hibe … hibernation. Sure, why not? Simply a vast building, no roads, nothing to show that man was here or ever had been, no improvement on the old OOBE pattern. But to leave it lying around cities, factories, aircraft, cars. How come?) under an oak tree . . .

BB laughed. (You didn't look very hard.)

(We put a super Reball around it,) the woman responded, smiling. (It's The woman glowed. (Isn't it beautiful?)

so tight not even a virus can get through, so certainly it won't be bothered I was smoothing more. (I can understand how you can sleep under the by ticks, mosquitoes, or anything larger.)

trees in weather like this, but how about winter? You still have to keep The rote was building fast. "Reball," short for resonant energy balloon, warm.)

which we were clumsily trying to generate, with mixed success, an energy (The Reball takes care of that,) she answered. (It keeps an air tempera-

field around the body to shield and protect, back when. And there are still ture layer all around the physical, just whatever you want it to be.) ticks, mosquitoes, viruses, and bears no doubt.

(How about food? You have to eat.)

BB grinned. (No doubt at all.)

She held out her arms in front of her body, level with her shoulders, I looked at him. (What did you mean, not too often?) palms upward. She closed her eyes and stood quietly. After a few mo-BB swung to the woman. (You tell him.)

ments, she lowered her arms, opened her eyes again.

The woman opened somewhat wider, and I could feel the attractive (That gives this body enough energy for at least a week.) She sighed radiation diminish, and I knew it was deliberate. I also was sure she knew I contentedly.

would not attempt any further percept of her, if that was the way she I flickered. (You mean you don’t get to taste food anymore, real food?) wanted it. At least that hadn’t changed either. Women still like to be (Oh, that. Sure.) BB got into the act again. He reached down, scooped mysterious.

up a handful of red loam from between the grass roots. (What'll you have?

(Not too often is about twice a week, more or less.) She smoothed, Wild rice? That's my favorite.)

watching my reaction.

I watched, fascinated … decided to go with the game. (No, uh …

She got one. I blanked.

Silver Queen.)

(All three of us here in human physical on the same day is quite un-

BB blanked. (Silver Queen? What kind of …) usual,) she went on, enjoying every moment. (We did it just to meet you.) (Here, I'll do it.) The woman took the dirt from BB, cupped it in her I smiled. (I appreciate it, believe me.)

right hand, and stared at it intently. The dirt began to bubble and boil, (Remember how you used to say …) She laughed, then started again.

changing color, re-formed into a small full-kerneled mature ear of white (You were always saying we are more than our physical bodies. Now it's the corn.

other way around. You, I mean we keep telling the new ones they are more She handed it to me and I took it. It was hot to the touch. I carefully than their energy selves.)

put it up to my mouth, took a bite. It was Silver Queen, the sweetest corn I turned inward. This was more than I had ever contemplated, but one I ever tasted, with the freshness of just being picked. It even had melted thing hadn't changed. One answer led to a hundred other questions. I butter, no, oleo dripping from it. I looked at the woman as I chewed needed to start at …

avidly. She smiled knowingly. If she kept leaking percepts, I'd have her (You want your usual baseline. Well, we are still human beings, or beings ident whether I wanted to or not and she wouldn't have her secret. I being human. I guess?) She looked at BB, who simply shrugged. That was handed her the corn, and she bit into it. We both chewed and tasted.

I swallowed, wondering where the corn went when I did so. It didn't I got a clean, clear percept. (The rest of the world, the earth, is it all like matter, so I smoothed. (All right, you've convinced me. What about no this?)

roads, no transportation? Suppose we wanted to go to Japan. That's not (It has been restored to its original ecological balance, the way it was within walking distance.)

before humans upset it so severely. It's all back together again, every tree, BB grinned. (Why, we just pull a skip, that's all. Short version, of course.

every plant, every animal … all of it.)

Why Japan?)

(Plus a few improvements,) BB put in.

(I noticed some very unusual patterns of growing things there when we (But it's not all laid out in huge gardens such as this.) I focused on the woman.

came in.)

(Only a small part,) she came back. (The rest is made up of forests, The woman smiled. (It's very lovely, isn't it?) woodlands, pastures, and prairies. Even the desert areas haw been re-

(First stop, Japan.) BB turned toward the woods, and the woman fol-

stored.)

lowed. (We'll be right back.)

My percept had been quite clear. Humans had taken over Mother I watched as they disappeared into the grove of oaks. I stood there Nature's work—with a few improvements. I didn't need to ask the hows of waiting, mulling over the strange mixture of physical and other energies it. The rote of the woman converting dirt into an car of fresh sweet corn that was now earth life. I found I was unable to determine where one said it all. If a human could do that … I had to complete it. I was sure of began and the other left off. There was no longer a sharp dividing line.

the answer before I asked.

Was it all like this?

(Suppose we wanted to walk around down there. I mean in a physical (All ready?) I turned and there was BB and the woman standing beside body.) I smoothed carefully. (How could we do it?) me. They seemed different, lighter. (We had to drop off the bodies.) The woman vibrated. (I'm sure there are any number of bodies under I suddenly remembered. (No tricks, BB.)

those beautiful cherry blossoms.)

BB rolled. (No chance. She's handling the ident. You and I just play I pressed. (We each could take over one, just like that?) follow-the-leader after her.)

(Yes, of course.)

I focused intently on BB, and stretched.

I had to know. (Suppose they all were already occupied … so to speak.)

CLICK!

BB couldn't stay out of it. (We 'd make some new ones. Doesn't take long. You want to go down?)

We were hovering over a rolling landscape, at about ten thousand feet.

I flickered. (No, no, not yet anyway. But what about the physical bodies Directly below us was what seemed to be the center of a lotus blossom, you left under the oak trees? Can just anyone occupy those if they want to?) BB rolled. (Sure, why not?)

the outermost petals in magnificent glowing colors spreading out in all directions for five or six miles. Beyond these were descending tones of Why not? That took some fast adjustment. Then I pulled out the rote green, from the very light of a fresh new leaf to the rich dark of the lower from back when, where others had occupied the physical bodies of our volunteers in the laboratory, communicated verbally, activated other por-tropical rain forest. She and BB were beside me.

tions of said body, including playing the piano … all without any wear and The woman vibrated. (This is one of the nicest.) tear, or concern … why not!

I could see why. I opened. (Who did this?)

The woman was smoothed at BB. (I don’t get the percept he’s ready.) (A group who wanted the area to give a percept of the beauty that began here. It was in existence when I came. Now others just take care of it.) 216

FAR JOURNEYS

217

PROMISED PLAN

(Sure he is,) BB came back. (He’s a big boy now. It would give him the whole rote in one gulp. Have so much fun it would blow him away!) you call it? … loosh. Like honeybees. Or Guernsey cows. Only now we (Let’s go back to the dorm first, as AA planned,) she came back easily.

know what we’re doing and why, and we’re happy to do it.) (Then maybe go from there.)

I turned inward and closed. This one I did understand, but the vastness I opened. (Do I have a choice in this?)

of the change was near-unbelievable. But I was here, and the evidence was She rolled. (Of course you do.)

all around me. The interstate to freedom.

I smoothed, holding back the vibration. (Let’s do what she indicates.

I opened again. (What else do you do?)

I've had too much experience with your fun, BB. No offense.) She lighted smoothly. (Experience Earth Consciousness. Not just in BB rolled. (Sure, sure.)

physical human form— remember we could only feel part of it, just a part?

The woman turned to me. (Close tightly.)

Now we go through it completely, from the smallest unicellular life up, I did.

millions of different life cycles, most of which we were unaware of as only physical humans. Even the physical earth itself has an active conscious-

CLICK!

ness.)

I let that one go by, too, because I couldn't resist the follow-up. (The We were floating amid thousands upon thousands of white sparkling natural food chain process, it still exists and you experience it? From begin-

forms, each animated and vibrating. At first, the brightness and radiation ning to end?)

was so overwhelming I was sure I would have to push the panic button or She came back gently. (It's an important part of the learning process. We scream for my INSPEC friend. Then it lessened, and I felt the warm sense couldn't make loosh without it.)

of understanding entering from all external points of me. I knew the forms (Hey, RAM!) BB could stay out of it no longer. (Some change, huh? No had deliberately diverted their radiation, whatever it was, away from me so more haze, no more M Band noise, no more locked-in rings! Want me to it conformed to my level of tolerance. I wondered how I must ident to show you around?)

them … probably a dull gray piece of fog.

I turned to the woman, but she didn't respond, so I took that to mean it (Welcome to the dorm of the renovated super-human school of com-

was all right. Also, she had closed. Evidently she wanted to keep her pressed learning!) The ident was BB, no mistaking that. (AA decided secret, and with a little more of her ident leaking, she wouldn't have any

"dorm " was the best term to use. I have no percept what a dorm is.) secret.

I caught the smooth yet vague ident of the woman on the other side of I followed BB. (Lead on, old buddy.)

me. She was bright and sparkling exactly as all the others. I knew she was We moved easily through the sparkling forms, and I hooked on to BB's human—or did I?—so must be all of the other sparkling forms.

ident to keep from getting lost. I could feel the radiation ease back in I opened as much as I could. (What's this place?) front of me, providing a pathway, so to speak, of low-level energy that I (You passed it when you entered earth.) As she sent it to me, I immedi- could tolerate. I was surprised when, passing various forms, a spark would ately got the flash of the sparkling ring. (This is our reference point until fly out and touch me. In the sparks were spoken words that I heard very we decide to …)

clearly … Hello, Bob. Hi, Robert … But I couldn't get an ident on She trailed off and closed. I tried to smooth. (Decide to do what?) any of them. Finally, BB stopped. In front of us was the First Entry.

She opened slightly. (I, uh … graduate.)

Station. It appeared much the same. There was a large cluster of gray I let that one rest for the moment. (What do you do in the meantime?) forms hovering around it.

She rolled lightly. (Well, for one, we make and gather … what did (Lot of changes.) BB smoothed. (But you wouldn't notice them if you didn't know better.)

I ventured, (Such as?)

him come closer. But I'll bet he's going to follow us. You ready? fust short (Heavy cutback on the survival imprint, for one.) BB rolled. (You remem-skips, that's all.)

ber that lecture you gave me, complete with living illustrations in the old I felt much more confident, with that small percept. I reached out and rings? You 'd be amazed at the difference that one change made.) stretched, holding on his ident.

I opened. (I am.)

BB blanked, then went on. (Yeh, well, another thing is a solid pre-

CLICK!

briefing and training before entry, especially as to continuing contact during physical sleep cycles.)

I'm floating over a wide brown field, just about three thousand feet up I blanked. (But you don't even sleep here, do you?)

… I'm flat on the bottom and strong life energy is pouring up at

me (No, don’t need to.) Then he lighted. (Oh, yeh, that’s the other point.

from below … I’m getting larger and larger and I eagerly convert the These first-timers go back before the changes as their first entry point, some energy into being me … I’m a whirling vortex and my action takes of them almost back when humans first began being human. They take one water out of the energy and helps me get bigger, and I become more human physical life cycle and one only, and come back here and join in. No conscious, more aware … as I get bigger, I’m able to know more …

repeaters, just one-timers.)

I’m like a round puffball on top, and I feel myself growing upward more I turned inward, then opened. (Is this one-timer pattern going on back than outward … now there’s much of my life energy flowing in me, where I came from?)

building up … (Wait, that’s … electricity!) … if I can keep grow-BB lighted. (Oh, sure.)

ing enough before the water leaks out, if the energy from below lasts long I flickered. (I haven’t had a percept on that taking place.) enough, I’ll get strong, really strong … but I’m drifting away from the BB smoothed. (Sure, you have.)

energy shaft and I can’t stop the drift, so I’m not getting enough to, I blanked. (How?)

enough to …

(That last outer ring, remember? Didn't come near the repeater department? fust went up and faded out?)

CLICK!

I flickered again. (But they were the ones going home.) BB vibrated triumphantly. (Well?)

We were floating over the earth, over a heavy forest. The brown field in I turned inward and closed. The whole thing was getting out of hand, the near distance was familiar. BB hovered in front of me.

or better, out of my mind-set, beyond my ability to absorb and understand He vibrated. (Fun, huh?)

instantly. And BB was pulling at me.

I flickered. (What was that!)

(Come on, RAM.) He vibrated. (Let's live it up, let's have some fun.) He indicated behind me. I turned. It was a medium-sized cumulus I flickered. (Fun? Well, I don't know, your idea of fun …) cloud, white on the side where the rays of the sun touched it, gray on the (fust usual stuff, I guarantee it. Things we do every day down there. Also, back, with a dark flat bottom. Clouds have consciousness? The basis for I got a hard rote from, uh, AA as to what to show you and what not to.) life? Waters, minute bits of

chemicals … and electricity! All the ingre-I scanned beyond the gray forms around the Entry Station and into the dients. What would a thunderhead be? Or a tornado, a hurricane, weather sparkling lights beyond. (Where is AA now? I never get a good ident on lows and highs!

him.)

BB cut in. (Ready to go again?)

BB indicated behind us. (He's back there. That barrier thing won't let I reached out and stretched, following.

CLICK!

hard, so he went on. (I guaranteed AA I wouldn't let you go through the end of it. He had a percept you weren't ready and he was right. But you I am in green water … it is lighter above me and darker below …

asked her about the food chain …) I

my mouth is opening and closing automatically, taking in water, which vibrated. (All right, all right!)

flows through my head and out my ears … no, not ears. Gills … I'm BB smoothed. (You always want it the way it is, don't you?) I a fish, a very big fish! … I can feel my stabilizing fins waving gently to smoothed also. (Caught me by surprise, that's all.) (Well, this next keep me in place, my vision is split, I can't see exactly straight in front of adventure is quiet, nice and quiet. Ready?) Every thing is relative, me … behind me is almost a blind spot, but my peripheral seeing is including BB's idea of quiet. I reached and

tremendous, detail is exquisite, but not many colors, only one or two …

s t r e t c h e d . . .

I try moving, just thinking about it, and I speed forward very rapidly, turn right, left, roll, steep climb, then dive … wait, something on the sur-CLICK!

face when I climbed, gotta go back, grab it, hungry, hungry … I shoot uncontrolled through the surface, mouth open, gulping in something as I I am waving gently up and down and bending, flexing … coursing do … then out of the air and back into the water, diving with a great into me from the smallest part of me, which is long and narrow with many sense of satisfaction and something wiggling and crunching in the back of tubes running through it, comes my share of the glorious life force, com-my mouth … a bug? … deeper, but it's not dark as I thought, I can ing

from the Whole, the family of which I am a part . . . and I know still see wonderfully … I am aware of another fish diving with me, tail how much the Whole needs me and I gladly, joyously serve … as the and back of the body sculling, sculling strongly … am I doing that, too?

energy that makes me waver and flex flows past my flat sides … (Wait,

… I am! … it just takes care of itself … I just think and it works, that's just air, wind!) … I take from it the parts needed by the Whole like walking or running in a physical human body … I stop. Ahead of and send it back through the narrow tubes because it is needed … I do me is another fish, it is coming at me … no, it's gigantic, the water is this so easily I don't think of it as work, it's breathing … it's what I'm deceptive, it's incredibly bigger than I am … it has hunger signals ra-for, to breathe for the Whole as I take ashes from the Whole and spread it diating … go, go, it's after me, swim, swim fast, it's coming after me out into the energy … my happy exchange … and the other, oh so

… up to the top, up, up faster . . . signal in from my sides, another important, my special shape … my profile, configuration … receives fish swimming violently beside me … signal from the stripes on my a special signal that the Whole understands, needs, and uses … all I do s i d e s . . .

is receive it and send it on … and I'm happy, supremely happy …

(RAM, when you're in the air, skip! Skip!)

with a total knowledge of belonging, performing as I was designed to I broke through the surface into the air, reached out, and stretched.

do . . . beautiful balance, giving … receiving … security and strength o f t h e W h o l e . . .

CLICK!

CLICK!

I was just above the water, and I saw the body of my fish, with a second one alongside it, arch through the air and reenter the water with the BB was beside me. (Gets to you, doesn't it?) I smallest of splashes … but immediately there was a rushing, a swirling flickered. (Where was that!)

under the surface.

He indicated, and I turned. Very close to me was a leaf, an oak leaf. It (Fun, huh?) It was BB beside me. I couldn't reply, I was shaking so was attached by a long stem to a branch. Beyond the branch was the 222

massive tree trunk, solidly dug into the earth. To have passed such knowin claws, pulling up, and digging in claws. It is waiting for me, sitting ing without awareness … I understood more this new Human school.

casually on a thick branch … I pull up beside it, sit back … he (Ready to go again? This is my favorite.)

waves his tail … and I wave mine in reply .

I flickered. (Well, uh, I'm not so sure. Maybe we ought to …) (Pretty good for a beginner, RAM.)

(This one we designed ourselves,) BB cut in. (If you don't like it, give me I am too stimulated to reply. I am remembering the great sense of a signal and we'II pull a quick skip.)

power in my muscles, sorting out the massive input that had come Reluctantly, I reached and stretched, followed.

through my senses … how could humans have ignored and distorted such profound perceptions … have picked up so little of it when a CLICK!

lower animal … lower? … picked up so much.

(Have to go down now.)

I am lying down in soft thick grasses, lying on my side … I open my The tan panther stands up, turns, and walks down the tree to

the eyes … tall trees surround me on all sides, their leaf-laden branches ground … walks down! I didn't know cats could do that, they always form a canopy far overhead, sunlight filters through to provide good but back down … I stand up, and slowly back down, jumping the last eight not overbearing luminescence … a large tan-colored panther is stand-feet easily.

ing over me, staring at me intently.

(fust lie down under the tree, near the trunk. Then pull a short skip, very (Come on, RAM … let's play!)

short.)

I roll over and stand up … stand up! … I have four legs! How I lie down in the tall grass, and very reluctantly reach and stretch.

sure and stable it feels! … my head is out in front of my body, now I have to turn to look at my back and hips … fur-covered, sleek …

CLICK!

what's that waving behind me? . . . it's a tail, I have a tail … I think about moving it, and it jerks … back and forth, back and forth, how We were hovering just above the ground, and I looked down. Below us, about that! … but it goes up and down just a little bit, more down than breathing shallowly and slowly, lying in the grass, was the body of the tan up … a scent gets my attention . . . smells, smells, I didn't know so panther … and another panther body, a

darker brown one, which I had many different smells existed . . . know instantly if they ‘re near or occupied.

far … the signal input is as good as or better than my seeing … and Beside me, BB rolled. (Liked it, huh?)

hearing, I could know everything just from listening … I flex my legs, I vibrated. (Wonderful!)

pull in my claws … yes! I have claws! I feel great! Watch out, world, (Well, we got one more for you to sample. This one, NA, uh, she picked here I come … such a glorious sense of being alive … totally alive, I out. She was sure it was your kind of stuff. You’II be alone, but she said you w a n t t o r u n , ju mp , c l i mb . . .

would know what to do. I’ll just guide you there. Ready?) (Well, come on, then!)

Wondering what she would pick, I reached and stretched.

The tan panther lopes off through the trees, and I follow … faster, now into a gallop … now running all out, dodging through the trees, CLICK!

easily avoiding low branches … the exhilarating flow of smells passing my nose and I sample them all … my eyes and ears picking up, identi-I am floating high over a rugged, snowcapped mountain range, and I fying and sorting a myriad of signals, all familiar … a large tree is dead can see for hundreds of miles in

every direction … and I can see down, ahead and the tan panther runs right up the side of it and I follow, digging down on the ground … beautiful focus, in the most minute detail …

224

FAR JOURNEYS

PROMISED PLAN

225

the leaves on trees, small animals as they move over the rocks … and I moment, the radiation lessened and I opened. I had ident immediately on am moving slowly, making a wide easy turn, the standing wave from the BB, and the vague ident of the woman.

mountain ridge offering solid and steady lift under my wings … wings!

BB rolled. (That big old bird must be wondering how his wings got bent.) I turn my head. Extending out from my shoulder is a broad arching wing I rolled with him. (Oh no. There wasn't one strained tendon or muscle, tapering to a round point, feathers ruffling in the slight turbulence. I roll not one feather out of line when I left. I guarantee it.) my head to the left, there is one to match from the other shoulder …

BB turned to the woman, a sparkling form I already had ident as her.

I’m not floating, I’m soaring … as a bird, am a bird! … a super (He’s your problem. I’ll check with, uh, AA, and see you at the site.) sailplane that does exactly what I think! I break the turn, and the feathers I turned to the woman. (The site?)

(That’s where we first greeted you.)

on the trailing edge bend down on one side, up on the other, instant I turned inward. There were so many points left unanswered, and 1 had ailerons … let’s reach for maximum lift … there it is, more under a percept that my visit was growing short. Get to the key items, those first.

the left wing than the right, turn into the lift … feel the lift getting I focused, completely open so nothing would be distorted. (The first-

stronger and stronger … it’s peaking out, turn and circle … tighten timers, when they come back …)

the turn, highest point of lift … must have a fifty-to-one glide ratio (One-timers,) she corrected.

… spiral up, tighter and faster … perfect control … air is thinner I went on. (If you have that constant input, you must have an output to

… keep higher airspeed … wonder where the stall point is …

keep the flow, the movement active.)

nose, no, head up more, higher angle of attack, more, hey, that's pretty She waited quietly … politely? … or had she percept of both questions good! … would never think a bird body could … oops! it does stall and answers. I went on. (So humans do graduate from here, the dorm.

… easy to pick up speed again … Yeah! Just fold the wings and Question: What happens to the graduates?)

doooooown we go!

She flickered. (I … I don't have a percept of that. They just click out.) (Hey, uh, RAM.)

(One at a time or as a group?)

And I bet these wings can take a big G load coming out of a dive if you She smoothed. (Usually several at once. Every so often, one goes alone.) open them slowly … let's see … we'll just dive a little faster …

(And they never return?)

(RAM, you know what you're doing?)

(No. They don't.)

That's about fast enough … now to open the wings a little at a time (Any communication with them? After they leave?)

… slowly … now back on the stick … uh, tail feathers up a little She flickered. (Not in a way that we can understand.) at a time … there! All back to normal, back to cruising speed …

I wanted to follow up on that one, but I was sure it would come out.

what a … hah! What a bird! Must be a condor . . . wonder what a (Any indications or symptoms they are about to graduate?) quick sparrow would …

She smoothed again. (Oh yes. They no longer need to experience earth, (RAM, just pull a short skip. Now!)

so they begin to go physical less and less. Finally, they stop completely.) I sigh … reach and stretch …

(Is that all?)

(No, their … uh, radiation begins to change. And they begin to close.

After that, they click out.)

CLICK!

I had the percept she was beginning to vibrate. (I don't want to act like an inquisitor, but …)

I was back in among the sparkling forms, and I closed tightly. The

She opened more. (Go on. We expected you to ask just what you are.) radiation was making me break out in waves exquisitely familiar. After a 226

FAR JOURNEYS

PROMISED PLAN

227

I took another direction. (I need as much of a rote as I can get. I may not informing? A boy to do a man's job? I was so closed I almost missed the get another chance.)

rest of it.

She smoothed neatly, but there was a little roll in her response. (Oh, I'm She was vibrating warmly. (We've been expecting this, uh, an event to sure you will.)

take place. Then we can leave!)

I was ready to ask about who the "we" was, and the event, but I felt the (In time-space,) I went on, (are there many other growth patterns in familiar INSPEC signal and began to respond … and so did she! So did consciousness similar to humans and earth?)

she! A great flood of percept ran through me and I had all the answers She rolled. (You can't count them if you wanted to, there's that many.

… I thought.

And new ones coming on line constantly.)

(We have to go back to the site now.) She was smooth, yet vibrating.

I flickered. (On line?)

(Are you ready?)

She rolled stronger. (AA knew you would like it if I used that phrase.) I closed … ident the knoll … reached and stretched.

I went with it. (I would like to meet this AA face to face sometime. He knows more about me than I do myself.)

CLICK!

She didn't respond, just rolled more strongly. I didn't think it was that funny. (But are humans now in communication with other such, uh, civili-

I was over the knoll … about a hundred feet up … the ridges zations?)

were off to the west, so I turned, looking past the fences … fences!

She smoothed out. (Not very much. There is some exchange, but it

And there were the Center buildings beyond, with their dark red doesn't seem necessary or important.)

roofs … the gravel road showed a cloud of dust as a car rolled past. I (What about other, nonphysical energy systems?) had made the wrong ident, back to 1982. A strange mixture of She lighted. (Oh, those! We visit them as often as we can.) emotions surged through me, and I knew it would take much to sort them I threw a high hard one. (To gather loosh?)

out, if I could at all. I had even returned to the second body without She turned inward, then opened carefully. (No. To sow it, to plant the direction, which was unusual. It was old stuff to home in on the seeds. That lets the, uh, ray have an ident to focus on.) physical, slip in … open my eyes and move my arms and legs. I Now I was the one who turned inward and closed. Her simple state-looked at the clock. Time: 2:40 A.M. Eight minutes! Only eight ment implied so much knowledge that made everything else no more than minutes?

sophisticated monkey chatter. There was much monkey left in me, too much. But I had a sudden percept, and I knew I had to verify it.

I ran it smooth. (Are you about to graduate?) She flickered. (Yes.)

(How do you know this?)

She vibrated. (He told me you would ask the question, but you didn't ask it right. So I can't answer it.)

I didn’t have to ask who the “he” was. (But you gave me you didn’t have a percept what happened to graduates.)

She smoothed nicely. (I don’t. But you do.) I blanked completely. Did she or INSPECS have it that I was to do the THE GATHERING

229

16. The

(Very proficient, Ashaneen.)

Gathering

And progress, too.

(There have been many changes. We believe you are ready for the next—

how do you call it? — step.)

It was not a percept, but I wondered idly if that was a polite way to inform me I would no longer return to the physical. Well, I could go add some music to Charlie’s sunsets, or …

Days, weeks, and months passed by rapidly without any unusual OOB

(That is not the step we have planned. You will know when your

physical activity. I had grown away from the desire to investigate the local events body release is to take place. We will not need to inform you. Nor do we that used to attract me so deeply. Occasionally, in the familiar early-

plan or participate in such release unless you request it. You have much to morning hours, I would awaken out of habit and detach from the physical.

complete prior to such change.)

I would wait for a strong ident INSPEC signal, but there was none. After a I received that information with mixed emotions, one great part of me few moments, I would reenter the physical and go to sleep.

yearning to get on with it, the other reaching back to physical earth and During this interim, I had no sense of isolation or deprivation whatso-the deep, poignant emotions I was sharing there. I remembered many ever. The absence of the signal in no way inferred to me that I was being years ago, during a strong pressure point, when the option to stay or ignored or abandoned. Instead, there was a complete sense of security, a complete release from the physical was available to me—and I agreed to full-fledged desire to continue and broaden my participation in physical take the physical as long as it was operational, whatever the situation, life around me, a freedom to express my self-maligned curiosity rather because I wanted to find out what happened tomorrow. Curiosity!

than anxiety as to daily and upcoming patterns. I simply went back

to the (We have explained to you that it is one of your assets. Completion of grazing principle—knowing what I found today would lead me to tomor-

this next step will provide you with many answers.) row, whatever tomorrow was. The signal would come when it was appro-There was very much a missing element in the pattern, and nothing in priate.

this world would prevent my curiosity from seeking the answer.

And it did. One morning I began to get a feeling of needing to do (Nor out of this world. You need no longer stay closed for the shift.) something I had forgotten. At first, I wasn't sure but what it was indeed I managed to stay calm, but expectant.

something I had failed to do in my physical activity. However, around eleven that morning I became exceedingly drowsy, so much so that I went CLICK!

into the bedroom to lie down for a short nap. I wasn't tired, but I did need to sleep. Within seconds after stretching out on the bed, I dropped into We were on the far rim of the outermost ring. I could recognize it from deep relaxation. At that point, I could perceive it clearly. The the very thin ambience of haze. The soft white forms were all around us. I INSPEC

signal was there, cleanly defined and strong. I succeeded in staying calm could perceive my INSPEC friend was with me, but there was no glowing enough to develop the OOB pattern, roll out and

into the second. Sliding form.

out of the second was automatic, and I reached and stretched, homing in (There is no need to distract their attention.) on the familiar ident.

I reached for any percept of Bill, then of Lou. I couldn't find either.

(They have, graduated, as you put it.)

The change was instantaneous, no sense of movement whatsoever. The That was to be expected, and I had a percept of their new address, as it bright glowing figure was in front of me. I was aware of the radiation, but were, but there was some factor involved that disturbed me, and I it was quite comfortable.

couldn't bring it out. Then I became aware of the intent inward focus of couldn't define. I was so completely fascinated by the display that I did the entire outermost ring, the inhabitants thereof. There was a strong not at first notice the background. As far as I could perceive in all direc-radiation of expectancy, not concern, as

if the star of the show was about tions, with the earth at the center, was a host of forms, countless numbers, to make an entrance. I followed the line of their focus. It was the physical it seemed. Some had shape, others appeared as no more than a wisp of planet earth, indistinct and nebulous from this perspective.

cloud vapor, all glowed in various degrees of intensity. From those nearest (Let us take another viewpoint.)

us, I had the same percept of expectancy, of waiting for the show to begin.

By all means, and the phrase does fit!

It must be some big show to attract all of these …

(It is what we call the gathering. These have manifested from other CLICK!

nearby energy systems only to witness the big show, as you call it, just as those within the physical spacecraft and your final-process humans. This big We were out in space somewhere between the earth and the moon, show which is about to occur is actually a very rare event— the conflux of indeterminate distance, fifty thousand miles plus from the surface of several different and intense energy fields arriving at the same point in your earth. It was very clear and detailed, not as it was before. I turned to look time-space. It is this rarity that has attracted so much attention. In terms at the moon and blanked. No more than a thousand feet away, or so it that you can perceive, it may occur once every

eighty-seven million of your seemed, was an immense, solid-appearing object gray in color, long and earth years.)

slender, conical-shaped with a hemispheric dome at the widest end —the Very long odds, and a long time to wait.

other end was somewhere in the distance, at least several miles. It ap-

(This does not warrant that it will be produced at that frequency. There peared motionless, but I had the definite percept of M Band radiation are random elements and variables in the format which cannot be pre-

from it. A spaceship, a physical spaceship?

dicted.)

(In your terms, that is correct. It is not a human construct. There are So random that the event might not take place, perhaps. There would many of such around the physical earth at this point. Their origins are of be a lot of disappointed …

your physical universe but not necessarily of your time reference.) (It is long past such point. It will occur. The interest lies in the result. It

“Many” could be five or five thousand. There was no point in trying to is best symbolized to you as a convergence of a great number of possibilities find out. But why around our earth, was it

…

which emerge as several probabilities and few possibilities. One of such (They are focused on the planet earth and humans just as you observed probabilities may alter not only your time-space but all adjoining energy systems as well. Therefore the wide interest. In human terms, still symbol-the others, and for the same purpose. Shall we move on? The answer will ized, the gathering is here to observe the possible birth of a new energy.

come soon.)

Will it survive the birth process, and if so, what are the potentials inherent My curiosity accepted gladly.

in such energy that will predict accurately the same at maturity? Or will the energy arrive stillborn, and all the possibilities remain no more than that—

CLICK!

weak uncoordinated possibilities?)

Running a bit of my exquisite H + rote made it quite clear. But my still My immediate percept of the earth was a pinpoint of reflected light in in-human self looked at earth and the human system …

the distance, no larger than a small star. From it came irregular waves of (There is a human oriental symbol for crisis which is composed of two energy, multidimensional, pulsing, intermittently

broken by occasional subsymbols indicating danger and opportunity. The event in human and quick flares, a complex unorganized pattern composed not of light or physical earth terms is definitely a point of crisis. It is quite valid that as to electromagnetic or gravitic structure, but of some other energy that

human existence both danger and opportunity will be present in extreme degrees.)

232

THE GATHERING

233

Danger? Physical danger? Mental? The …

(Those are the possibilities, the exact nature of which will be determined CLICK!

by the event itself. Whatever your percept may be is one of the possibilities.

One or several will occur.)

I was getting better, or older. No sense of motion whatsoever. And I The other side, the opportunity.

had very little surprise at the location. I was on the grass in front of

(That is the key to the understanding of the event. It will offer human Charlie's cabin. BB and Charlie were over to one side, busily engaged in consciousness a rare potential to emerge rapidly into a unified intelligent something. I went over to them just as BB perceived me.

energy system that will range far beyond your time-space illusion, creating, (Hey, RAM!) He vibrated loudly. (Look what we're making!) constructing, teaching as only a human-trained graduate energy is able to Charlie was laughing. (I keep telling the kid you can't have a sailboat do.)

and a hang glider all in one. Air and water aren't the same!) Our visit to earth in 3000 plus . . .

I flickered. (You can see him now, Charlie, visually?) (A possibility that may become probable with the event. Your action is Charlie smiled. (Oh, sure. Worked that out the first day he got here. He must have changed the ocean a hundred times before I got him stopped.

one of the minute random factors that may make it so.) Had it yellow with square waves. How about that. But he's smart, catches If the opportunity is missed …

on fast.)

(Humans will retreat as the dominant species on earth until they no I smoothed. (Well, I hate to break it up, but I need BB here to do longer survive as active consciousness, eventually in any form.)

something for me.)

I asked it directly. (And you, all of you, what will you do if that takes BB opened. (You name it, RAM!)

place?)

Charlie waved. (Come on back, kid.)

There was a beautiful warmth and a soft smile in the response. (We BB rolled. (Who's to keep me away!)

would just have to start up some action on some other planet in time-space Charlie shook his head and laughed, and I reached, stretched for the with new humans.)

ident INSPEC …

I turned inward and closed. There was not much I could think or do. I was hit hard emotionally and I didn't want to lose it, not now.

CLICK!

(There is one more process we have to perform, then you can return to your physical.)

BB was beside me. (Hey, you sure tightened your skip. I would never I wasn't sure I could handle one more, but I knew that I would.

have hung on except I was used to it from a game we played back in …) (Ident your friend BB and guide him here.)

He cut short and closed tightly as he became aware of the brightly glowing form of the

The rote spread instantly. I had left him with Bill, and Bill wasn't INSPEC. I should have warned him, I guess. Below us was the physical earth, about five hundred feet. It was night and occa-there …

sional lights dotted the countryside. Almost directly under us was an area (You will locate him easily. There is a very special function he can per-

of water like a small pond or pool, and immediately beyond, a green form for us.)

pyramidlike structure with a light glowing inside. It had a strong point of No questions were needed, and I reached ident BB and stretched.

familiarity, but I couldn't bring it back.

I turned to BB. (Just open slow. It's a friend.) He did so carefully, then focused on the bright glow. (Uh, hello.) (We appreciate your coming.)

FAR JOURNEYS

THE GATHERING

235

BB had no cultural restraints. (We had a curl back in KT-95 who inward and closed. The man was standing in the middle of the floor, and claimed he met you or one just like you. We put it off as some more wild his physical body was on the cot. BB had backed away, flickering heavily.

rote.)

He focused at the INSPEC. (He's out, I got him out! But, uh …) (It is understandable.)

(Inquire as to his purpose.)

BB went on. (He kept throwing it at us and after a while he pulled a skip The man responded, but all I was able to perceive was M Band scratch-

and never came back. So he was right, you're real.) ing and screeching that indicated strong emotion. If it was his first time, I (You are needed to perform a specific act, if you will.) could understand and empathize with him.

BB flickered. (Uh, sure, sure.)

(He stated he wished to serve humankind. Very noble goal.) (Let us move closer.)

I managed to open somewhat. (Why this resistance? It's there if I try to The three of us moved down slowly, just over the top of the green get close to his friend AA.)

pyramid and beyond, and stopped outside a small structure in the middle (A true paradox refuses to exist. You will understand soon.) of a grove of trees. It was very familiar to me and for some reason I was BB came in strong. (He wants to go with us! Can he do that?) becoming uncomfortable. It was as if I were encountering a resistance, The resistance and screeching were so strong they hurt. Yet I knew I something pushing me back the more I tried to move forward.

had the answer before the INSPEC gave it.

(Your friend AA is there. It is important that you help him at this point.) (Inform him he must stay and perform his designed function. He has no BB blanked. (AA?)

other choice at this point.)

(That is correct.)

In spite of the hurt, I tried to observe. After a moment, BB moved up BB focused and so did I. Inside the small structure, a man was lying on and joined us. The man sank to his knees in the middle of the floor, and a bed or cot. The resistance I felt seemed to be

emanating from him. It the screeching became so strong I had to close completely.

was exactly the same as the other times. It was AA, I was sure. The (Let us move to a point where it is more comfortable for you.) resistance was very strong and it made me vibrate.

I agreed eagerly.

BB turned. (I guess it's him, all right. I get a part of his ident, not much.

I'm getting some other with it that I know, too. But the percept is wild.) CLICK!

(It is important that you help him separate from his physical temporarily.) BB lighted. (You mean like RAM here?)

We were just outside the thin haze of the Intermediate Area. In the (That is correct.)

distance were the rings with the indistinct form of the physical earth at He blanked. (How can I do it?)

the center. The M Band noises, especially the screeching, had faded com-

(fust pull gently. Use the energy you apply when you skip.) pletely. I opened in relief. The INSPEC was in front of me, BB off to one BB turned and moved in close to the man on the bed. I watched

with side, completely closed, which was strange.

fascination, wondering if this was the way it had started with me, if some (It is done. The pattern is complete.)

nonphysical friend had been enlisted to help me move out of body during There was a point of finality in the statement that made me uneasy. It the early stages. But I didn't have any nonphysical friends back then–echoed back through me, triggering familiar emotional rote as it went, and that I knew of.

I dealt with and diverted each one as it arose. This time it was different. I Suddenly, the resistance grew much stronger and pushed me back. I had far too much exquisite and precious rote to let it be otherwise. The held my position as best I could, feeling very uncomfortable. I turned uneasiness vanished.

I opened wide and smoothed. (I understand about individuation. It is seen and eternal song that is hauntingly familiar, a reminder if needed, not necessary.)

cutting sharply through the noise of local traffic. INSPEC, BB,

Lou, Bill, (You have learned your lessons well, Ashaneen.) her, all There, in the song. But not AA!

The brightly glowing form winked out. For now, I knew there would no Then it fades, the stars return to the blackness, I take a deep breath, longer be an INSPEC ident to follow, but I felt no sense of loneliness. I and go back inside.

moved over to BB as he hovered motionless, still closed.

I focused. (Hey, old buddy. I got to go back.) He opened slowly. (Yeh, uh, RAM. I got to do something myself, anyway.)

I had no doubt what it was. (Well, you'll do fine, fust like pulling skips and playing games back on KT-95.)

He lighted. (Yeh, sure! A bunch of games!)

I opened wide. (You can do it, tiger! Keep my ident! And have fun!) I turned and started to reach but he stopped me. (What's the push, BB?)

He flickered. (Uh, that last thing we did, me pulling AA out, uh, you don't have any percept on it, do you?)

(No— except it was certainly AA. That same resistance stuff was there.

Why? Something I didn't get?)

BB focused on me hard and I waited. Suddenly he lighted very brightly and started to roll strongly. It almost became human laughter, it was that strong.

I flickered. (What's so funny?)

(You have fun, uh, RAM!)

I watched as he moved in the direction of the First Entry Station, still rolling. When he disappeared inside, I turned and reached, ident physical body, and stretched gently. I moved slowly inward through the rings, feeling strong and sure, knowing I still had much human rote to pick up and go through. I entered the second and then into the physical, knowing one pattern had ended and another would begin.

But what was so funny? The green pyramid, the three of us, serve humankind . . . green, green pyramid roof, three on a beam . . . hey!

On a clear night before going to bed, I might go out and stand on the sun deck and look up. When I do, sometimes the stars disappear and there is nothing but blackness overhead. From beyond the black comes an un-

cate or divert their attention were met with total unawareness at the

least and, at the most, bewilderment, fear, or outright hostility. All were attempting to participate in physical life in one way or another with no Epilogue: End Game

success whatsoever. All seemed to have one common characteristic. They were completely unaware of any existence other than physical. Only through repeated observation at first hand was it possible to generally sort out and classify such near-earth humans into some semblance of order.

The Dreamers: This group has a distinctive vibration or radiation that With the calm that settled over me, I began to sort out and run the indicates they are attached to a physical body somewhere in the current various rotes tossed me which I had simply tucked away for future refer-earth time-space. This infers but does not verify that they may be in an ence. I did this not only to check what I may have missed but to lay the out-of-body state during sleep. They apparently are attempting to con-pattern down tightly, on the premise that someone, somewhere, as an tinue the activity they have been performing during their physical waking individual or group, might seriously investigate the material—under the hours, or those they desire or fantasize. Some are simply going through the guise of philosophical, pathological, educational, or some other study. As motions; others are trying to talk with those they know who are physically before, if the following helps just one individual achieve a profound under-awake, or eating, drinking, working, playing, trying to perform sexual acts, standing of who and what he is, the purpose has been served.

acting out Mitty-like roles in the middle of Manhattan—all without

fru-Running a rote is much like trying to recall the memory of an event out ition; all, with few exceptions, without any recognition of similar activities of the past. The difference rests in the immediate clarity of every detail around them. What might be loosely termed evidence of their origin is once the unrolling process begins. Best results appear to be obtained if one that they suddenly “wink out” or disappear in the middle of an action.

is in a relaxed state and isolated. It is important to remain completely Are they awakening in the physical again, out of sleep? Dream analysts awake physically, with your left-brain consciousness in the driver’s seat.

may be on the right track but with the wrong perspective.

Then simply think of the ident—the subject of the rote—and wait. You The Locked-Ins: These are very similar to the previous category, and can write down notes or dictate into a tape recorder as you attempt to might be confused with them initially but for several key differences. This convert the information into written or spoken words. If you feel you group is composed solely of those who have permanently exited their might have missed something, you can RESET and start again, either at the current physical body—dead physically but don’t know it. Consequently, beginning or at any given serial point in the information/experience. You they are trying constantly to continue a physical existence to which they can hit a mental PAUSE button if the phone rings, although this often have become habituated. They often remain around physical locations, requires a complete rework back to the relaxation state if so interrupted.

such as houses, and physically living persons to whom they have become However, the rote will still be there—”open” at the point you left it. This attached. Some continue to attempt reentry into their dead physical bod-takes time and patience, thus the need for isolation.

ies and to reactivate them, even into the grave—which may give credence The early results came out in the following form, not very tight but to the strange radiation effects sometimes perceived in cemeteries. The perhaps more cogent:

anguish these must go through as they witness the cremation of their physical remains is certainly something to ponder.

As with the Dreamers, this group is totally and compulsively bonded to **Cruising the Rings**

The first inner layer or ring was clear and more distinct from my non-time-space materiality. Moreover, they appear to be deep into enveloping emotionally based fears and drives which they attempt to act out but physical perspective, and all seemed to be completely focused on the activities of the in-human physical condition. Any attempts to communi-

never conclude. As a group, they are the major blockage in the flow of the EPILOGUE: END GAME

human learning experience. Until they are reached and assisted or some glimmer of awareness occurs, they remain in this locked-in state for years, particularly proud of my efforts. I did learn one or two minor items. First, perhaps centuries. Their numbers increase constantly and will continue to awareness of the cacophony of discordant, undirected radiation engen-do so as long as the physical human values that generate the condition dered by human thought—identified as M Band noise (my label). Second, remain unchanged.

how to close down my perception to bring it to tolerable levels. The The Wild Ones: Much lesser in number than the above but with the necessity syndrome again. It's a nice trick to have, even in the physical same motivating drives expressed in an entirely different manner. The waking state.

reason is a slight shift in awareness. The Wild Ones do not realize they The next ring outward is fairly straightforward. It is composed of those have lost the use of their physical bodies, and they do not perceive any-who do realize they are no longer in physical human life, but have no thing other than physical matter reality. However, they are very much awareness or memory of any other possibility. Often they are stunned by aware that they are somehow different. They don't understand the whys the loss, and do no more than remain in a motionless, nonperceiving or hows of it and have no desire to learn. All they realize is that such passive state, as if waiting for something to take place. They are usually

difference releases them from all of the restraints, obligations, and com-easy to contact, instruct, and lead to a suitable outer ring. The population mitments that were a part of their physical lives. They construe this as here is small, relatively, and remains more or less static due to the assis-absolute freedom and attempt to express themselves accordingly in the tance supplied by the outer rings.

only way they know of—through replicas of physical activity. Thus their Moving outward, the next ring is the largest of all, and contains an efforts to participate in physical human life—which they perceive as tak-apparently limitless number of sub-rings. However, they all come under a ing place all around them—take on many bizarre forms. The previously strong general category: At least, all residents here know they have passed reported visit to the human sexual pile is a sample. There are implications through physical death. There may be vagueness and differing beliefs as to that whenever a human physical consciousness in waking form becomes what and where they are at this point; hence the often sharply delineated

“loose” or shaky for whatever reason, it may provide an opportunity for sub-rings. Within this ring, approximately through the center, there exists one of these to “piggyback” just for the experience of it. The frequency of what might be labeled a null point of a different variety yet quite perceiv-such incidents is not known, from my present perspective. Hopefully, very able from an external perspective. It is generated by the existence of two few. They can get mean at times.

symbolized energy fields overlapping and exerting near-equal

pressure/

There was much to be learned from these inner rings, most of it the influence without interaction between the two. There are no standing hard way if your perspective is still heavily encased in human time-space waves set up by frequencies beating against each other, for the two fields illusions. It is pointless to recount the many attempted contacts with the are not compatible. The analogy of a bar magnet with positive and nega-inhabitants therein. You can do it yourself without bothering to enter the tive fields meeting at the center of the bar does not apply. It would be OOBE state. Interview and observe a cross section group of humans now better to picture a gravity field exerting attraction in one direction and the living in any large city. The resulting data will be a restrained version and action of a sitcom on television in another.

much easier to handle. The source of such preoccupation in every case On the inner side of such null point, the dominant force is HTSI, short seems to be extreme distortions of the original survival imprint.

for Human Time-Space Illusion, strongest at the innermost sub-rings and Evidently there are methods by which rescues are achieved individually lessening inversely throughout the entire ring until it is quite insignificant and on a relatively large scale—and the process is ongoing. I personally on the outer edge. On the outer side of the ring, the dominant force is have been involved in only one or two that I can remember, and I am not NPR, or Nonphysical Reality, which is as general as one can get if there is no accurate translation available for the little that is known of it. A

mirror image in field strength, the NPR effect is greatest at the outermost edge,

diminishing slowly to the null point, then exponentially to the inner edge first taste is scarcely palatable, but the effect is interesting, something new.

of the ring.

When the opportunity arises, the neophyte takes two drinks just to

see if The pattern of human passage through this particular ring is most fasci-the effect is enhanced—and it is. Uncontrolled, the pattern is all too nating, again from the external view. It is composed of energy in human familiar, all the way down to skid row. Nothing is more important to the experiential form moving in two directions, both inward and outward. The wino, nothing occupies his thinking other than where the next shot or hit inward flow is composed of fresh energy from the NPR area first encoun- is coming from. Near-total amnesia is common, and more significantly, a tering the HTSI field, becoming more and more attracted by it through a lack of desire to change. He has forgotten who he is and couldn't care less.

series of in-human existences, passing through this particular ring more Reclamation and remembering is a slow and sometimes painful charade.

rapidly once the null point is crossed. From that point inward, the move-Once achieved, however, the innocent has transformed into a state of ment accelerates to the inner edge of the ring and through it, terminating being far different from the original first-taster. Where the analogy does usually in the lowest of the inner rings.

not match: In the human life experience sequence, the change is perma-The outward flow, after release from or skirting the innermost rings, nent.

commences the haphazard-seeming yet meticulous path through this larg-In serial form, the itinerary of human experience might be mapped est of rings. For some, the passage is relatively direct, with

but a few in-something like this:

human physical existences to provide the impetus. Others—the great majority—require up to several hundred in-human lifetimes and thousands of earth year cycles to complete the process. The reasons for this wide dis-

INWARD FLOW OUTWARD FLOW

crepancy are not obvious to me. However, one characteristic of the more (read DOWN)

direct route appears to be the careful selection of in-human life experi-ENTRY/EXIT

(Read UP)

ences, plus accomplishments in the face of what might be termed statisti-INTERMEDIATE AREA

NPR First-Timer

Graduate

cally impossible odds. The two routes both emerge at the outer edge of the ring and lead to the outermost ring.

To: In-Human Physical To: Home? NPR

The single outermost ring is composed solely of those who are

preparing Time: Full Spectrum

for their final in-human experience—the Last-Timers, or Seniors, which-AMBIENCE FIELDS

ever suits your perspective. They have lost their gray appearance and (Awareness-Focus)

much of their humanoid form; they are nearly white in radiation with NPR: 95% HTSI:

occasional sparkling patterns around them. They are tightly closed, and do 5%

not respond to any communication attempts except possibly among them-OUTERMOST RING

selves. It is difficult to observe their final reentry into human experience.

Last-Timer (Senior)

It is either too rapid or instantaneous. Their exit from the final cycle is AMBIENCE FIELDS

Indeterminate

represented by a sparkling glowing light which moves rapidly outward (Awareness-Focus)

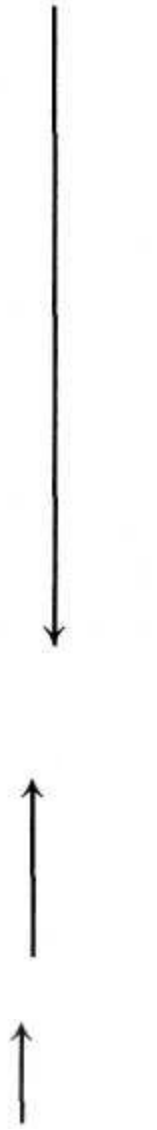
NPR: 80% HTSI: 20%

through the rings, with occasional pauses for some unknown reason. Upon To: Final In-Human Time: Full

passing this outermost ring, they suddenly disappear from perception, Spectrum

leaving no residual image or trace.

In some respects, the entire process resembles crudely the cycle of an innocent coping with an addictive drug or chemical such as alcohol. The MAJOR RING



244

FAR JOURNEYS

EPILOGUE: END GAME

245

INWARD FLOW

OUTWARD FLOW

AMBIENCE FIELDS

To: Desired In-Human

(read DOWN)

(Read UP)

(Awareness-Focus)

Time: Current

OUTER QUARTER

First Repeaters, frequent

Long Repeaters To:

To: In-Human Physical

Selected In-Human

NPR: 30%

Idents:

Physical

HTSI: 70%

Certain religious

AMBIENCE FIELDS

groups, friends and

(Awareness-Focus)

Time: Full Spectrum

Time: Selected

relatives, current, rest

and recuperation

NPR: 60%

facilities, rote-

HTSI: 40%

Idents:

synthesized physical

Contemplatives,

artifacts and activity

philosophers, certain

including heaven

religious groups, service-

and hell

to-humanity devotees,

helpers, guides, rescue

workers, others

MAJOR RING

INNER QUARTER

Short Repeaters

To: Desired In-Human

MAJOR RING

AMBIENCE FIELDS

Time: Current

Long Repeaters,

(Awareness-Focus)

UPPER QUARTER

First Repeaters, trace

intermittent

To: Required In-Human

NPR: 5%

Ident:

To: In-Human physical

HTSI: 95%

Refugees from lower

Time: Coordinated

rings, rehab centers,

AMBIENCE FIELDS

Time: Random

instructional classes,

(Awareness-Focus)

nonconformists, the

guilty

NPR: 50-55%

Idents:

HTSI: 45-50%

Certain religious

groups,

quantum physicists,

transpersonal

WAITING RING

First-Timers, Short

psychologists, historical

Repeaters

humanitarian leaders,

specialists

AMBIENCE FIELDS

To: Inner Quarter,

(Awareness-Focus)

Major Ring

N P R :0

Time: Indeterminate

MAJOR RING

HTSI: 0

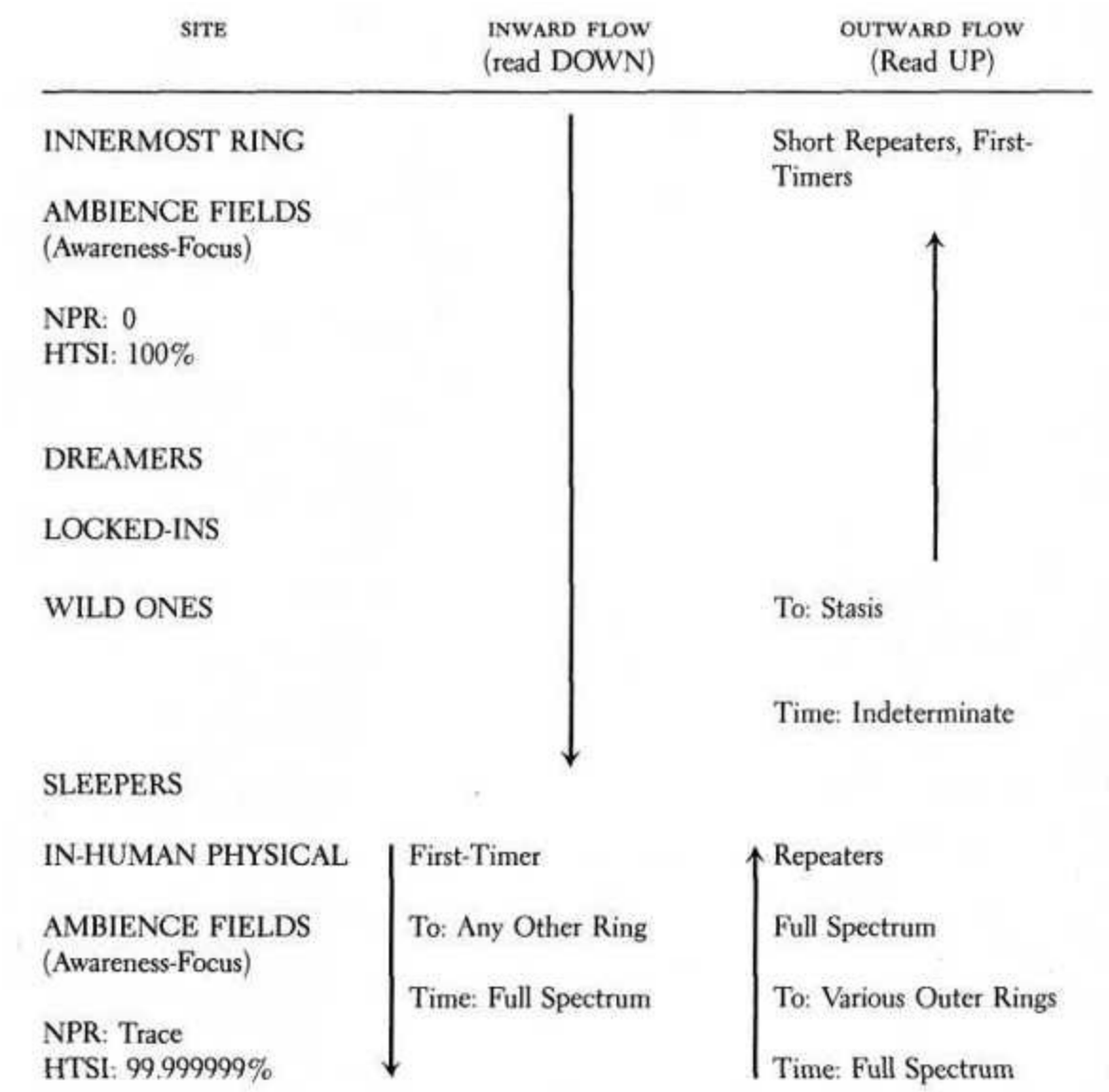
Ident: Total

Spectrum

LOWER QUARTER

Long Repeaters,

regularly


SITE
INWARD FLOW
(read DOWN)
OUTWARD FLOW
(Read UP)
INNERMOST RING
AMBIENCE FIELDS
(Awareness-Focus)
NPR: 0
HTSI: 100%
DREAMERS
LOCKED-INS
WILD ONES
SLEEPERS
IN-HUMAN PHYSICAL
AMBIENCE FIELDS
(Awareness-Focus)
NPR: Trace
HTSI: 99.999999%
Short Repeaters, First-Timers
To: Stasis
Time: Indeterminate
First-Timer
To: Any Other Ring
Time: Full Spectrum
Repeaters
Full Spectrum
To: Various Outer Rings
Time: Full Spectrum

”

now more powerful attraction of the field, and the Unit settles into the field itself, to become a part of it.

To launch and achieve escape velocity, the Unit must (1) remove the adhering particles that created the problem while retaining such information/data/experience so as to bring back Something of Value; (2) develop and store sufficient energy to achieve both launch and escape velocity, which infers a far greater amount than that available at the point of original entry under typical conditions, plus additional reserves to compen-sate for the extra payload on board.

The solution is made complex by the lack of efficient methods for proper detoxification and removal of adhered particles, as well as the avail-ability of only the most primitive techniques for proper energy distillation and accumulation. Therefore, at best, extrication is a long and arduous process. The key is to begin first with ballistic trajectories, followed by elliptical orbiting, ever increasing the perigee until escape velocity is reached.

Thereafter, the Unit can return to its original base with its payload —or, with its increased energy, move on to greater exploration.

The foregoing is at best a generalization, specific only in the broad classifications indicated. It is a simplification of a very complex and intricate pattern of movements perceived from an external perspective. It is deliberately devoid of as much humanism as is possible by a human, in the belief that such starkness will gather the attention and understanding Another way to describe the process in contemporary terms: The Unit latent in the left-brain

modality. However, the problem still remains—the (the original you?) is attracted and drawn by the human earth energy field.

need to express in a form remotely acceptable to in-human consciousness.

The Unit decided to make a close-in pass-by through the field to obtain data and information. This reduces velocity in the Unit to a degree greater This, then, is a flow sheet of where the action is in which all of us are than that calculated to occur from friction, due to the unexpected adher-vitally involved. It could be identified as the Earth-Human Energy Envience factor of the particles within the field. The reduction is so great as to ron, Human Time-Space Illusion. It is a summary based upon several fall below escape velocity, and the Unit moves inexorably into an elliptical hundred individual explorations, most of which are beyond literal transla-orbit. At each apogee of the orbit, the Unit passes through the human tion. To chronicle each individually would consume an entire volume in earth energy field again and gathers additional adhering particles there-itself, if indeed it were possible. Therefore, this baseline will have to serve from, causing greater reduction in velocity—which in turn lowers the for the moment. We might get lost, with or without it, but our chances perigee of the orbit. Finally, the orbit breaks down and succumbs to the are better with it.

agree that time-space truly does exist. Without this agreement, it is impos-

Rote BHP-1

sible to have primary human consciousness. The energy form must agree Compressed Learning— Category Human

that there is a time, such as the 1980s or any other time frame by earth The first point in consideration of human structure certainly should be reckoning. It must be agreed also that there truly is a planet earth de-the note that a small percentage have never been through the experience signed and created in the form that it is. It must further agree that prior to the present sojourn in time. Some may have had physical life consciousness expressed as a human has certain characteristics and limita-experience in other parts of time-space and in another physical form, but tions.

this is their first run as a human. Other first-timers have never been in a The blanking or sublimation of previous experience is a part of the physical form of any sort.

process. This is to assure that there will be a minimum of interference in Time-space—physical matter—and especially human existence on earth the performance as a human caused by previous life patterns, physical and

—is an interesting anomaly. It has some peculiar qualities that are unique in other realities. Bear in mind that this is all at the conscious perceiving in the development of intelligence and consciousness. As a result, human level; it is not removed from the essence of the energy form accepting the life has many attractions. To some it is like attending a vast amusement agreement. Such experience will remain with the newly human energy park with a multitude of different types of exciting rides to try—a play-form in a nonconscious state. This is important because such experience ground where standard rules (non-earthly) are suspended for the moment.

or purpose may well be the underlying motive that is the driving force They desire human existence simply out of curiosity. They have received a behind the performance of such energy in human existence.

rote on this interesting state, and want to find out what it is to be a part of Once a decision or agreement has been reached, a propitious and proba-it. Many, having observed the state at a particular point in human history, ble birth entry point is selected, taking into consideration the genetic, decide it is an ideal opportunity to try an experiment conceived in their environmental, social, political, and economic elements that may—not periods of contemplation. The peculiarity of human existence at a given absolutely—ensure the realization of the purpose for such entry. Many point in evolution provides an opportunity to try out the idea.

times, due to the possibility that all factors may not be appropriate

and Still others find that the limitations imposed by physical incarceration suitable, some entries are made simply on the possibility or hope that the as a human also engender concentration of certain energies available only goals can be achieved. Often there are so many variables present that it in in that state. This is the only point available to apply such energies.

turn presents a most enticing challenge to simply try to beat the odds, as it By far the greatest motivation—surpassing the sum of all others—is the were, or change them by thought and action. Some make it, some do not.

result. When you encounter and perceive a graduate, your only goal is to Another factor is that the demand or need for selective new points of be one yourself once you realize it is possible. And it is.

entry far exceeds the supply. Thus, many may get tired of waiting, as it Thus we “go to physical” because of what it is—an intense learning were, and will accept entry under the most marginal of circumstances.

process, a school of a very unusual sort. It has the implication that an A review of the learning processes and the absorption of information by important part of that learning process is to force the admixture of two a first-timer will provide a beginning overview. Upon entry (birth), the different types of energy modulation. One enters as male and the other as first-timer is surprised and shocked at the very severe constraints of the female. The drives, needs, enculturation, and other factors all may be

physical body. It can no longer move freely and easily at the mere thought designed to literally force the accommodation, melding, and understand-or desire. Thus, much of the early weeks of existence as a human are taken ing between these two systems of consciousness.

up with conscious and frustrating efforts to obtain control of this new The conditions of entering physical life as a human are relatively strict.

physical body. Simultaneously, it is overwhelmed by astounding demands It is as if a detailed agreement is entered into. First, the energy form must for nourishment—a process that was an automatic function in previous 250

FAR JOURNEYS

EPILOGUE: END GAME

251

existence. Add to that a massive battery of strong and chaotic signals events we do not remember, and rarely recognize the influence these have pouring in from sensory sources never before perceived, the five physical upon our activities/experience. When examined from an external point of senses, and one begins to get a better appreciation of the traumatic state observation, automatic use of this learning process becomes quite visible.

that is undergone. There are indications that the effect would be

much The principal learning system devised by the various cultures in human more severe were it not for the reinforcement received by the first-timer history is the most widespread and accepted, yet the most unnatural. For during nonconscious periods (sleep), from interested and concerned ob-the greatest part it ignores completely the in-place and operating primary servers left behind in the reality outside of time-space.

and secondary learning processes. Thus its very artificiality, without natu-From this beginning emerges the primary learning system that contin-ral means of focusing attention, requires a form of dedication and disci-ues throughout human life. It is the focusing of conscious awareness. Pain pline generally unavailable to the average human conscious mind. Atten-or pleasure, as reported by the five physical senses, turns attention to the tion flickers, fluctuates, especially in low-order, repetitive experience, event being experienced, and such experience is then learned and stored.

denigrating much of the learning that might take place. Crude as it may Further, if the element of emotion is involved, the storage process is be, such learning methods are held in high esteem in human existence, enhanced greatly. Physical experience of an extreme nature also deepens and virtually all of it revolves around the knowledge, understanding, and the learning process. Simply stated, the depth of learning (retention, re-control and application of physical matter, including the energy system so call) is in direct relation to the intensity of the experience. Conversely, the generated therein.

more shallow the experience, the lesser the attention, which diminishes Most vital, this dominant yet artificial and limited system of learning greatly the learning process.

operates entirely through input from the five physical senses. Because of Primary learning is the data base upon which we humans principally this foundation, it has the effect of eliminating any last vestiges of origin-conduct our physical lives. Other learning processes affect our thoughts identity remaining in the individual. This is at once the heart of the and actions, yet the fundamental pattern of performance is based upon problem and the major challenge to the naiVe energy form.

this primary learning.

As the first-timer lives his human life, he finds virtually nothing to guide Secondary learning, another pattern which is present throughout hu-his mentation in directions other than those directly related to time-space man existence, takes place beyond what we call our level of consciousness.

physical matter. Unfortunately for the human, this includes those organi-This is data received through our five physical senses in those areas where zations who purvey belief systems based upon individuals both present and attention is not focused. This takes place during waking physical life and is in past history whose knowledge of origin-identity was operational during stored and retained in the most minute detail. Due to the lack of atten-their human sojourn. In the retelling and conversion to verbal human tion, less than 20 percent of such secondary learning is ordinarily

available communication, plus the erosion of many retranslations, only portions of for recall by the human conscious mind. Still, this entire spectrum of the process remain. Sadly, such portions attempt to teach effects rather memory is called upon unknowingly by the individual as the need arises. It than causes. Only in very rare instances do these provide clear access to colors and affects our thoughts, decisions, and actions, and we are quite the source.

unaware of it.

Therefore, as the first-timer moves through human physical life he picks A third form of learning occurs during our cyclic nonconscious state up and absorbs many unsuspected attachments. The most powerful of (sleep). At our waking conscious level, we remember very little of such these are emotional, or rather distortions thereof, which relate solely to activity although it becomes deeply embedded in and becomes a part of expression only in time-space reality. These reach such magnitude as to be the memory-experience system upon which we base our life activity. Cul-virtually impossible to achieve and experience in a single physical human turally, we have been trained to place the least importance upon those lifetime. The results are a compulsive need to reenter and recycle to com-

plete that which had been begun, to perform the purpose for which there vices. Entertainment “foods” in the form of alcohol, drugs, tobacco, etc., had not been “time,” to repay imagined “debts”—the list becomes end-and back around the cycle to foods that are “good” for you, to keep you less.

healthy. Clothes that not only keep you warm but are made correctly, of a In short, the problem can be stated very succinctly, which turns a first-desirable color or texture, made for a variety of occasions, and, of course, timer into a repeater: human physical life is addictive.

in rapidly changing style. Shelter that goes far beyond the hut in the hills, There are two overwhelming factors that engender such addiction or larger and/or in a desirable location, equipped and reequipped with newer decay of orbit, as you prefer. Put the two together and interweave them furnishings, facilities, decorations, all catering to individual taste and cur-tightly, and it becomes easy to perceive just how difficult the Human rent style primarily, far secondarily to comfort and overstated “need.”

Compressed Learning System can be, especially for the unaware and unin-Some of these have been brought to the point where it is actually formed. This may in itself be part of the training. Any attempts to de-difficult to die. Extensive and expensive life-support systems in institutions scribe the methods are near-incomprehensible to those who have never are an example. Keep the body alive, never mind the details. In some been human, just

as it is extremely difficult to explain postgraduate status

“civilized” societies, it’s a crime to take your own life. Whom will they to a human first-timer. The two factors involved are Survival Drive Distor-prosecute if you’re successful? All such extras and add-ons are stimulated tion and Prime Energy Diffusion.

and rationalized by countless inducements, few of which can stand up under intense scrutiny for validity. This is compounded by competition **Survival Drive Distortion**

both to acquire and to dispense, which brings into full play the natural Like animals, plants, and other organic life, physical man is heavily physical law of supply and demand.

imprinted at birth with the will to continue to grow and live, to survive.

To protect these accumulated items to serve the body which is you: This is expressed in two basic ways: Body Protection and Maintenance locks on doors, fences around houses, doors and gates, laws and rules, The first demand is the acquisition and consumption of food and water.

medicines and drugs, guns, police officers in prowl cars, lawyers, doctors, This is followed by pressure to keep the body suitably warm or cool. Next nostrums ad nauseum, cities and nations, banks, armies and atom bombs.

comes the need to keep it safe from predation ranging from other

humans Within this distortion lies the adhesive that binds the heavy particles to and carnivorous animals through insects and down to the smallest virus.

the energy form—which all began with the early agrarian cultures and The fight-or-flee dilemma arises when two or more of such needs come tribes. Intense overkill by the survival drive—all physical. Nothing else is into direct conflict as to priority.

important. It had to happen, free will being what it is. Sexuality-

Nothing controversial in that, so what's the problem? Most humans Reproduction

spend most of their waking hours taking care of these matters, one way or The most powerful of the survival drive imprints takes precedence over another. There's no choice in the matter. You're in the top .0001 percent all others, and therefore has been subject to more major distortions than of the human pyramid if you know without question these needs will be any other. The greatest among these has been, and is, the illusion that, as met tomorrow, the next week, the rest of your life—by your own action, a creative act, it thus engenders automatically the creative emotion of your family, or "your" government.

love, ethereal and godlike. The results are attachments and commitments There's also nothing new in the massive distortions that begin to occur that are both irrational and restrictive, which not only distort severely any beyond the basic needs. Storage of food or other assets just in case there current physical life goals but

continue beyond—illusory burdens of guilt, may be a change in the future, endless varieties of food aimed not so much obligations, and a vast number of related memory patterns too potent to at nutrition as at taste and aesthetics, special food preparation and ser-release. Further, the original motivating drive to reproduce has long since become secondary to the temporary sensory peak of the act itself. With 254

few exceptions, it is doubtful if it has ever been otherwise with the male.

an interim statement of emotion. Many studies, authoritative books, and Knowing this, the female with a propensity for perception has taken this hundreds of millions of dollars have been dedicated to the application of manipulative advantage to broad extremes through hundreds of years of this concept during recent years—all apparently backing away politely cultural evolution. Those females who succumb to the illusion of perma- from the fundamental source of the phenomenon, through either igno-nency have no choice but to lie back and take what is coming. Simply put, rance or rejection.

one fuck doesn’t make a future. A baby maybe.

The result is a chaotic mixture of unchecked and misdirected energy With increased objective knowledge of the influential power of the that is and has been the human experience. Isolated attempts are made to reproductive survival drive, the lures and blandishments thereto are used act and think without emotion, which is an impossibility. Even in the blatantly and consistently to distort even further the high sensory enter-laboratory, it is slowly being determined that any experiment is affected by tainment factor of the act itself—carefully omitting the slightest reference the observer, inadvertently, unconsciously, and unobtrusively. Thus abso-to its original purpose. Those using such enticements to irrationality range lute replication can occur only under identical ambience—again an impos-from the individual through major industries to governments themselves.

sibility, considering the flickering thought-emotional patterns of the ob-The result is a cacophony of distortions, all aimed at increasing reproduc-server-experimenter. For a simple test, try recording each and every tive-act desire and need, the amplification of the problem without provid-thought and emotion you have expressed during the past one minute.

ing a sensible solution. All of which only adds strongly to the glue that Then attempt the same recall for a minute one hour ago.

binds the human in low orbit.

At the individual level, the generalization becomes specific. In every moment of existence, we are a seething brew of emotional response to **Prime Energy Diffusion**

both internal and external stimuli. Awake or asleep, the ever-changing Consider what we call emotion in all forms to be unknowing expressions mosaic of flowing energy continues to surge at assorted amplitudes and of our Prime Energy Drive, or the Creative Force inherent in each of us.

frequencies. We place value judgments on each and every portion, as There are no exceptions. Included are joy, sadness, anger, happiness, hate, determined by our own experience and impressed upon us by the culture friendship, nostalgia, possessiveness, loyalty, ego, greed, guilt, fun, worry, in which we now exist. When the two conflict, we usually choose the anxiety, among others. Add a few not ordinarily regarded as such: curios-latter as a sop to expedience. Thus we attempt to let full expression of the ity, ideas, equality, hope, loneliness–and, of course, love in a nonordinary

"good" emit from us and try to suppress and repress the "evil," hide it connotation.

from view. For the vast majority of us, this is the extent of our efforts to In this context, emotion is the key to and the driving force underlying control this mighty and most vital energy that is our true heritage. At best, every thought and action in human existence. The concept of unemotion-we are only partially successful using an incorrect standard of measure-alism is an illusion. Even the most extreme objectivity covers carefully an ment.

emotional agenda. Rationality and emotion go hand in hand when traced We make decisions in blind anger and resent the results. We

hope and back to the source. If a human being is the product of a Creative Force, become disappointed. We laugh in joy and become depressed when the then being human is totally an emotional expression of such energy.

moment fades. We hate when a person, place, or thing does not fit or There has not been a single major act in human history that has not meet our concept of what it “ought” to be. We think we “love” and break been driven and/or inspired by emotion. Astute politicians now recognize our hearts when we discover it just isn’t so, we were mistaken. The list is that voters emotionally elect presidents, that simple facts and figures con-endless, and we keep trying because we can’t help ourselves and we don’t tain emotional coloration. All great leaders throughout mankind’s exis-know any better. We ride the waves of our emotions through the peaks tence have had emotional appeal as their source of power. Motivation is and the valleys until some of us become cynics—neatly neglecting the 256

obvious, that cynicism is itself an emotion. The mess gets messier when he’s never heard a song, doesn’t know of words, melody, and pitch; worse, we do perceive that effective and achieving left-brain decisions are made if he doesn’t know he has vocal cords or even a voice?

ultimately by some emotional factor, hidden and disguised as it may be.

Clues may lie in the common mislabeling and misconstruing of emo-This propounds the old can't-live-with-it, can't-live-without-it syndrome.

tions akin to but definitely not the same. To avoid confusion, call it Super Free will is no longer free and hasn't much will, buried under a swarm of Love (SL). Knowing the difference is the key, as the ident love has been emotional encumbrances.

used so broadly as to have lost any significant meaning. Try this crude By far the largest accumulated heavy load is the emotional mass loosely overlay for starters: SL is indestructible, as stated. Once activated, no held as the human ego. Originally a probable sprout from the survival subsequent thought, emotion, or event can have any effect upon it. SL is imprint, it requires and consumes constantly immense amounts of rein-not in any way dependent upon manifestation in physical matter, or activ-forcing emotional patterns, all of which are by their very nature distorted ity therein. SL has no object, animate or inanimate, although such may be and distorting. Ego exploits the concept that it is needed to exist and one of the catalysts to trigger the generation thereof. SL is a continuous radiation, totally nondependent upon like reception or any other form of achieve, that the emotion of confidence cannot exist without ego support, return whatsoever. SL is.

that happiness is satiated ego. Ego can bring forth hundreds of irrational emotional reasons to justify its existence—sidestepping

the fact that emo-A very complex and rugged curriculum, this Human School of Comtion and irrationality are not synonymous. It steadfastly maintains that pressed Learning. Parris Island at its peak was a teatime social by compari-there would be no human personality were it not for the ego.

son. There, at least, you had a reasonably clear idea of what you were doing and your probable destination. Knowing this, it was worth it.

At least, the ego is correct in one premise. The human is an emotional My very deeply dedicated response: Among the very few seniors and being. It’s simply a question of utilization, of application.

graduates I have encountered, there was not one who would not repeat The epoxy that locks the whole heavy load onto the unit and makes the in-human learning system again and again, no matter how many times orbit decay inevitable: The heavy preponderance of such emotions are

—knowing the indescribably magnificent result. My fleeting glimpses sup-directly related or attached to time-space physical matter earth events, port totally this perspective.

things, and relationships; as such, they are not applicable to nor can they exist in any reality other than their point of origin.

Preparation: Launch and Lift-off

There is one exception. It is the only clear and accurate representation Here is what might be euphemistically called a crib sheet for the course of the original Prime Energy, and cannot be generated at will. It is a

—presumably offered with the knowledge and consent of the instructors.

synthesis of other emotional thought and action, brought into expression Like all such aids, it doesn't give all the answers and there is no guarantee and thenceforth indestructible. Most important, it is not peculiar to the as to accuracy. The best that can be said is that it was hurriedly copied time-space continuum and the existence of it is not contingent upon such from the instructors' manual with their permission and cooperation. Dis-environs. As such, it is not part of the load factor. Instead, it is the source torted and poorly filtered as it may be, perhaps this cup of murky water is of power to obtain lift-off, reach orbit, and establish escape velocity.

indeed better than none at all to the parched and thirsty runner. At least The major—if not the only—reasons for attending the human experi-it's water and it may help cross the finish line jogging lightly and happily.

ence school are first, to learn to translate such energy into a discernible Detoxification/Load Reduction/Purging

form, and second, to become a first-order generator thereof. This is no The design calls for a continuation and expansion of physical

life activ-easy task if you don’t know what it is, if you don’t know how to express it, ity in all forms—physical, mental, and emotional. There is no inference and if you can’t knowingly generate it. How does a person learn to sing if that a lessening or retreat must occur, as this will extend the process rather 258

than shorten it. The change lies in the perception, control, and redirection it is quite appropriate to refer to any portion that may serve a given need.

of the energy forms that are you, just as coherent light produces far more There is no fixed pattern or order common to all of the human learning effective results as a laser. Start with these fundamentals as a baseline.

experience. An event early in the life exercise of one may surface years Reality Is That Which Is Perceived

later in another, if at all. Establish Grazing Principle As a participant in time-space, you perceive it and it is a reality to you.

Instead of actively seeking out needed changes, deal with each as it If you have not perceived any other energy systems, they are not real to appears in your daily life. Live and be just as you have until

you perceive you. However, you must consider that you have done so but they are not an emotion or attachment that is so obvious you can't ignore it. Live a within your present awareness. It then becomes simply a matter of re-

Twenty-four-Hour Day

membering. Energy Does Not Exist Until Expressed Become aware of what you do and think at all times, in all activities, We are expressions of energy. The energy that we transform or generate and examine the emotional factors that appear to be the strongest, that has no reality until we express it. An idea has no reality until we transmit attract your attention. Include your sleep periods with their NVC-dream it or put it into practice. Knowledge and information are nothing without content. Explore these by asking yourself why, repeating the probe until dissemination and/or application. A single thought is not real unless it is you reach each source. It is then easy to detach and release the energy for instilled into or acts upon another or is acted upon itself. Think and do is other purposes. Start with the small and work into the large. Begin Ego the operating productive combination, either mentally or physically, in Diet Regimen

one or more energy systems. Inhibit, restrain, or block the flow of any such A frontal attack on this most entrenched and concentrated center of energy and it ceases to exist. Energy Focused Is Exponential distorted emotion is contraindicated as not feasible. Much too many lose Just as a lens can concentrate solar radiation to a temperature many that battle, most never begin it. The trick is to start a cutoff of the times greater than normal, so other energies

can be transformed and mod-emotional power feeds that are vital to its existence, modify and redirect ified. This is particularly valid within the energy spectrum available to the energy therein. Bear in mind that you are bombarded constantly with human consciousness. The fact that we exercise them randomly and un-ego gratification ploys aimed at modification of your behavior for the knowingly for the most part, specifically in the nonphysical categories, benefit of others. The problem is in your emotional response, not in the does not invalidate such potential. Consciousness Is Focused Energy blandishment itself and the consequential acts you perform. If you want to In particular, human consciousness is widely focused into time-space drive a luxury car simply because you enjoy doing it, that's fine. If it makes physical matter. This is not the totality of energy consciousness involved, you feel more important, or you like to be seen driving it, if you have to as other forms of the same consciousness are active concurrently in diver-put "my" in front of the identification, you've found an ego power feed.

gent systems of reality. Two inferences may be drawn from such multiplic-Keep this perspective and apply it when the need arises, and act accordity: The human aspect can be adjusted in focus to a much more concen-ingly.

trated point, offering potentials of power and action too immense and The second source of ego-emotional power feeds is internally generated.

unfathomable to be considered lightly. Second, the other, nonhuman It is generally accepted that ambition and the drive for

achievement are forms of the same energy system might be drawn upon if the need arises.

primarily ego-gratifying processes. To determine if this is valid or such With the above tucked away, it is possible to get to the “hands on”

motivation comes from a more profound origin, conduct this test: Will phase. Although the following notes are presented in a sequential manner, these needs be happily met if you in no way receive any public or private credit for your success? Are they absolutely essential to your physical survival? If the answer is affirmative to both, you’re further along than you 260

FAR JOURNEYS

EPILOGUE: END GAME

261

realize. Even with fame, fortune, and adulation, your load will actually anyone to discern accurately the quality of any thought or action; good-lighten. If both come out negative, start unplugging the feed by asking evil, right-wrong, exist only as illusion. In orbit, there is no up-down. As a why.

point of expediency, it may be necessary to adhere to the concepts of the At a point in your unplugging process, you will find glimmers of Prime culture in which we exist temporarily. Without a solid overview, we can-Energy radiation which provide any

justification you may desire. The not understand the ultimate value of what we do. Therefore, follow your more emotional energy you so release, the greater such energy you will own design, lighten the load by refusing to bond lasting emotion onto any perceive. Divest Survival Sex Ties

physical act or the action of others. Detach Matter-Emotion Due to the need to protect and maintain until physical maturity the Physical things, places, etc., are units within time-space, to be enjoyed offspring of the reproductive act, many cultures have attached certain and to be used as tools in the learning experience. None is “ours.” We obligations thereto. While this is generally a purely physical requisite, don’t own or possess any thing or person, nothing belongs to us. Even the many have taken the position or inference that far more is involved. The matter we use for our physical body is “borrowed,” as it were. Store the reproductive act is first and foremost a very powerful response to purely memory and the experience, leave the emotion behind. You Are Your sensual stimuli. The response is not in itself an emotion, although the Responsibility

depth of the experience often causes fantasizing that it is exactly that and We like to lay this one off wherever and however we can, blame condi-of much greater import. To confuse the issue further, sexual union is one tions and/or anyone else for what we do and are when there seem to be of the significant ways to express the SL emotion found in the Prime mistakes, take credit when everything is great. As exercisers of free will, Energy.

we do our own instigating. Calmly accepting the results will get

you lift-off The load reducer is to understand the difference. There is no right or points. An old folk song with the title “Ain’t Nobody’s Fault but My wrong engendered either way, only difference. Recognize that, from the Own” says it very well. Look it up. Free Will Is Fantasy perspective of solely a physical act, any emotional attachments thereto Within time-space, the very constraints thereof preclude any such the-relate only to time-space reality. As a procreative act, it is physical in ory. At physical birth, we are bound not only by our previous experience, nature. Unless other energy patterns emerge as a result, enjoy it but don’t whatever it may be, but by the genetic structure of the physical body we get hooked on it. You don’t need to take it with you, because there’s better inhabit. From that point on, we have no choice but to be bonded into the in the original form—what you experience here sexually is a very weak flesh for that lifetime, long or short. We are bound to maintain and oper-imitation of a part of a totality. No male or female “owes” the other an ate our physical bodies within the limitations they impose. The set and obligation to copulate. Sexual attraction and attractiveness are elements of setting of our physical existence is controlled, initially at least, by others.

a survival drive which is purely physical and no more. Yet these are enough What remains, colored and modified as it is, might be considered free will.

to alter drastically individual life patterns. Load is induced when more is Exercising this upon another only increases the load. Off-loading is accom-made of it than it is.

plished by maximizing this remainder in nonphysical areas and accepting Sexuality is not love, if love is defined as an expression of Prime Energy, without emotion the limitations so imposed. Laughter Is a Purging but may well be a procedure through which the individual eventually Process

learns of its existence. If this does indeed take place, keep the love and As a direct expression of the Prime Energy, when in doubt let it out. An release the sexuality, then no load exists. Release Value Judgments inadvertent smile is part of the same spectrum. It's one of the best of With the distortion of time-space as a baseline, it is impossible for emotions, but must be spontaneous to produce results. Seeing and en-

joying the humor in life is something not to be missed. It relaxes, de-tunes the affirmation in mental action rather than words. After you are well the ego, puts any event into its proper perspective. Pain-Pleasure (PP) Is established with the technique, add specific needs such as information, a Learning Curve

health care, problem solving, communication, or any of the procedures Consider these as a waveform originating within the

survival imprint, listed previously, using NVC. The answer will come usually not in words, and therefore signals relating only to time-space physical matter. They are but in pictures, sound, living action in your mind. There is no limit to the essential tools that can be used for measurement. Think of it as a sine ways you can use this method provided you do not impinge upon the will wave, with pain below the baseline and pleasure above it. The amplitude of others. If you need help, ask for it by NVC. You will receive it, perhaps of each is an indicator of intensity, which can be controlled. Step one: not immediately, but you will, often in the most astounding serendipitous Sort out and remove all emotional energy adhered to your PP accumulated and synchronistic ways. Be sure that you qualify your need and that you memory. Step two: Begin control of each portion of the waveform so that can handle the answer or result. Measure Your Load-Energy Ratio you can increase or decrease the amplitude at will. You are approaching At physical birth, we enter physical life into a presumed innocent con-escape velocity status when you can reduce your PP waveform to a near-sciousness. The path to adulthood and your progress along it can be perfect straight line. Maximize Your Sleep Periods termed a loss of such innocence, scaled by the number of responsibilities This is the most neglected and misunderstood portion of our existence.

you have willfully assumed, as created by your authoritative acts. Maturity, Freed temporarily of the restrictions placed upon us by our left-brain which is not the same, is calculated by totaling the percentage of illusions organization and the press of physical input, the sleep segment offers a you have released and discarded —deliberately, not forced disillusionment.

great opportunity to advance in many areas. Any of the previous sugges-Wisdom—the lightest and most valuable of pay loads—and your progress tions can be initiated and developed during the sleep state. Consistency along the interstate highway thereto are reflected in your willful action, and frequency are important. You may not get the results the first, third, mental and physical, as the result of your release of such illusions.

or fifth time, but eventually you will succeed. Begin by stating the affirma-The Detoxification/Load Reduction/Purging process can be intertion:

preted as simply the sequence of these three, adulthood, maturity, and wisdom. You ultimately are your own instructor and you will fill out your

/ am more than my physical body. Because I am more than physical own report card. Building Escape Velocity Energy matter, I can perceive that which is greater than the physical world.

It will begin to generate automatically as the result of the human learn-

Therefore, I deeply desire to expand, to experience: to know, to under-

ing experience, more than enough to achieve a tangent to your previous stand, to control, to use such greater energies and energy systems as may orbit when you graduate. It is the understanding that the actions sug-

be beneficial and constructive to me and to those who follow me.

gested here may help in such production. Then no longer will you reflect Also, I deeply desire the help and cooperation, the assistance, the and transform the Prime Energy as in the past, but create it in and of your understanding of those individuals whose wisdom, development, and ex-

own and radiate it in all ways, in all forms—call it loosh/love or whatever perience are equal to or greater than my own. I ask their guidance and label fits—without need for subject or object. “Pas de Lieu Rhone que protection from any influence or any source that might provide me with Nous”

less than my stated desires.

A language professor father, now in another reality, used this to wake up students in his class in French, claiming it was an old and famous Say it first as words in your mind just as you are drifting off to sleep.

French proverb. Some worked earnestly for hours trying to solve the Convert as early as possible to nonverbal communication (NVC), stating 264

enigma. It may be very appropriate here, too. To find the solution,

say it in your mind or vocalize it using a French accent. Listen to what you are saying.

I. The Out-of-Body Experience: Most

Frequently Asked Questions and Answers

See you in Home—or along the way.

QUESTION: HOW DO YOU KNOW IT ISN'T JUST A TYPE OF

DREAMING?

Most individuals do dismiss the experience when they encounter it as nothing more than a vivid dream. At most, it may be categorized by some as what is identified as a "lucid" dream. In the latter, the dreamer is apparently aware that he is dreaming, and can control the content of his dream, even to the point of changing the event, the participants, and the outcome.

In the OOBE, the individual is near-totally conscious, as our civilization defines the state. Most if not all of your physical sensory perception is replicated. You can

"see," "hear," and "touch"—the weakest seem to be smell and taste. Your perspective is from a position outside your physical body, near or distant. In a near state, it is usually from a location impossible for you to "be" with your physical body, such as floating against the ceiling. In a far location, it could be in Paris when you know you are in New York physically. You can observe

events taking place, but you cannot change or significantly affect them. You can verify the authenticity of such events subsequently if you so desire. You cannot participate to any major degree in this physical activity because you are not "physical." It is the extreme reality of the OBE that sets it apart from a dream. It is as "real" as any physical life experience.

QUESTION: CAN ANYONE GO OUT OF BODY?

Several studies made during the past ten years indicate that some 25 percent of adult humans remember having at least one spontaneous OOBE. Many were unaware of what had happened to them until the phenomenon was described to them. As stated earlier, we take the position that everyone goes into the OOBE

state during the delta or deep-sleep state, as a natural process and in varying degrees. Therefore, one step may be to begin to remember the OOB patterns you have or are performing each night when you sleep. Further, after specific psychological and/or philosophic preparation, we believe that anyone can indeed consciously move into OOB states.

QUESTION: WILL DELIBERATELY GOING OOB HURT YOU?

COULD YOU DIE FROM IT?

After twenty-five years of investigation as well as personal exploration, there is no evidence to support either possibility. There is no doubt as to the emotional impact upon discovery of the reality of the OOB state. The major adjustment of 266

APPENDICES

one's belief systems is often traumatic and must be dealt with carefully. Physiologi-your being killed in an auto accident during the coming year. Over the past fifteen cally, there seems to be no effect, including any depletion of energy.

years, working with laboratory subjects and program participants, there have been no incidents that remotely could be construed as "possession" or something de-QUESTION: DO DRUGS OR ALCOHOL HELP OR BRING ON AN

structive or uncontrollable.

OOBE?

There is some data to indicate that hallucinogens may be producing an uncon-QUESTION: IN YOUR PREVIOUS BOOK, YOU GAVE AN "ANGLE"

trolled OOBE. The drug experience in and of itself has not been studied in depth METHOD FOR GETTING OUT OF YOUR BODY, BUT I

as to this possibility. Alcohol, as a depressant, tends to inhibit a conscious OOBE, CAN'T MAKE IT WORK FOR ME. IS THERE

SOME-or at least the memory thereof. There is some support to the concept that anesTHING I AM NOT DOING RIGHT?

thetics are no more than chemical triggers to produce deep OOB states, e.g., The method described was a very early technique that worked at that time. We unconsciousness. Experimental slow administration of these under nonthreatening have since discovered the many other vital factors that are involved in the process.

conditions as well as the medical descriptions of the various "planes" of anesthesia Also, we currently use other techniques that are easier to understand and perform.

are the basis for this premise.

Briefly put, it is not quite as simple as envisioned earlier.

QUESTION: IS THE OOBE SIMILAR TO THE NEAR-DEATH EXPERI-QUESTION: WHAT DOES IT MEAN WHEN YOU GET STRANGE

ENCES THAT HAVE BEEN WRITTEN ABOUT IN SEV-

ACHES AND PAINS IN YOUR HEAD AND VARIOUS

ERAL RECENT BOOKS?

PARTS OF YOUR BODY WHEN YOU TRY TO GO OOB?

It is very similar. More pointedly, with allowances for cultural connotation and Generally, it infers unconscious anxieties and concerns that must be sought out uncontrolled action-reaction due to a high-stress ambience of the moment, they and addressed before you can go on to the OOB state. If you are able to get appear to be one and the same. Most if not all of the elements found in the near-behind or perceive the reason for each one at the level they exist, then release the death reports have been replicated repeatedly with various laboratory subjects emotion attached, these physical signals will disappear.

using the Hemi-Sync process. The difference lies in the perception of the events and situations encountered. Without anxiety and stress, armed with objective QUESTION: CAN YOU GET BACK INTO THE WRONG PHYSICAL

observation, another perspective of the same state/condition is forthcoming.

BODY BY MISTAKE?

“Can” implies the ability for such incident to take place. It can happen, as it QUESTION: ARE SUCH THINGS AS WEATHER CONDITIONS,

did to me in the early days. How often is another matter. In our current civiliza-MOON PHASE, LYING NORTH-SOUTH IMPORTANT

tion, there are no means to understand this possibility even on a

speculative basis.

IN ACHIEVING THE OOBE?

It has never happened to our laboratory subjects or those who have trained with We have no hard data to support the premise that any of these have a signifi-us. We use a simple homing device to ensure return to “your” physical body. To cant effect on the OOBE. There are a few indicators that lying in the north-south return neatly and in a hurry, all you need to do is to think of one part of your position does have some effect, which would infer that the earth’s magnetic field physical body—such as a big right toe—and attempt to move or wiggle it. This may have some bearing on the process. Because it was easily done, the new isola-brings prompt results. Because there is no data and the “wrong body” incident has tion booth in our laboratory is aligned in a magnetic north-south position. By occurred (to me), it does presume the possibility that it might happen with an setting up artificial magnetic fields within the booth, we will be able to equalize or untrained novice. If that is your possibility, remember the “wiggle big toe” signal.

produce a “null” magnetically, much as the astronauts experienced in their moon It will save much fear and worry.

exploration. Subsequent studies therefore should provide partial answers, at least.

QUESTION: WHAT ABOUT ANIMALS IN THE OOB STATE? HAVE

QUESTION: IF I LEAVE MY BODY TEMPORARILY, CAN'T SOME-YOU MET ANY? COULD YOU COMMUNICATE WITH

ONE ELSE GET IN IT WHILE I'M GONE?

THEM?

If our premise is correct, there is no more possibility of this taking place than The only ones recognizable to me have been domestic cats which have been a there would be during normal sleep. If there could be statistics worked up on such part of our household family. They evidently have at least a second body, too, possibility, the odds against an occurrence of this sort are far greater than those of which can be perceived if they are asleep when you are out of body and you go to 268

APPENDICES

APPENDICES

269

investigate. Of recent interest to me, during the departure phase, I encountered Q U E S T I O N : I S I T E A S I E R T O G O T O A P L A C E O R A P E R S O N

three cats just outside, sitting relaxed and observant. In greeting them, I was WHILE IN OOB?

surprised to find they were the three of our favorite cats who had

died physically Usually to a person, easiest to someone who is close to you emotionally. There during the past three years. In retrospect, why I was surprised I don't know.

are some who can go to places, but it requires a specific "address" or ident.

QUESTION: WILL YOUR SOUNDS ON YOUR AUDIO CASSETTES

QUESTION: IF YOU MEET A BEING WHILE OOB, HOW CAN **YOU**

OR THOSE ON ANY OTHER SOUND CASSETTE IN-

TELL IF IT IS MALEVOLENT OR BENEVOLENT?

DUCE THE OOB STATE?

An unqualified reply to this one is difficult. Often what is perceived as vicious or It would be very rare if at all. Certain other factors must be approached Erst—evil is simply a very impersonal energy you have encountered which you interpret such as the fear barrier, reappraisal of belief systems, among others. It is the as aimed at you personally. A sudden undertow at the beach may seem frightening extreme exception that balance has been reached sufficiently to move that easily and deadly, and it is your fear and the unknown potential of it that makes it so.

into the OOB state.

The undertow itself doesn't know you exist and cares less. These can be avoided if you consciously limit your input "frequency," as it were, allowing only those on QUESTION: WHAT ABOUT FLYING DREAMS? IS THIS AN OOBE?

your "wavelength" to communicate and/or make contact with you. At best if We generally recognize that the flying dream, with or without an aircraft, is a there is a question, pat it on the shoulder and tell it to go home. At worst, you go rationalization of an OOBE which is unacceptable to the belief system of the back to the physical and regroup. Otherwise, say hello and enter into some form of conscious mind. Later data suggests that the dream of getting out of your "car"

communication.

and performing some act falls into a similar category. Have you ever dreamed that you forgot where you parked your "car"! Also, the falling dream often becomes QUESTION: CAN ONE GO FORWARD AND BACKWARD IN TIME

reentry into the physical when practiced in "slow motion."

WHILE OOB?

Very much so because the true OOB is not a time-space state or condition. It is QUESTION: HOW IS REMOTE VIEWING DIFFERENT FROM AN

not as productive as one would imagine, for several complex

reasons. Most impor-OOBE?

tant is to use a strong home ident to get back in your original start-point. Such Remote viewing, or the ability to “see” events taking place at another physical ident must include not only place, but time. Practice near-time runs before tack-location, employs a trained state of consciousness that is effective while still very ling the “long” ones.

much within the physical body. Usually only one form of perception is utilized which translates as visual. In the OOB state, there is no awareness of the physical QUESTION: WHAT IS MY “FORM” WHILE OOB?

because you are “away” from it. Also, perceptions other than visual are invariably Think of your second or immediate nonphysical body as much like gelatin that present. There are other differences, but these are the basics.

has been removed from a mold. It “remembers” the human form and thus is near-identical. The longer one is separated from the physical, the weaker the memory QUESTION: CAN AN OOBE BE INDUCED BY HYPNOSIS?

becomes unless reinforced. Time-distance also seems to be a factor. The farther There are a number of reports that this has taken place, and it may be possible.

“away” from the physical, such memory or its effectiveness becomes less. If left to We have no direct experience with it. The

weakness of this technique from our its own devices, you may become a ball, a teardrop, a small cloud, or just a "blob."

perspective lies in the fact that the OOB individual is not in control of the activity All of this can be bypassed by slipping out of the second body immediately after

—which seems to be quite important in the process.

separation, and becoming clear undiluted energy. You can always "grow" a hand and arm if you need one.

QUESTION: WHEN YOU FIND YOURSELF OOB WHILE STILL PERFORMING A PHYSICAL ACT SUCH AS DRIVING A

QUESTION: WHAT ABOUT THE REINCARNATION PROCESS? **ARE**

CAR, WHAT SHOULD YOU DO? HOW DO YOU CON-

PHYSICAL LIFETIMES SEQUENTIAL, SIMULTANE-

TROL IT?

OUS, OR WHAT?

Get back as fast as you can! Use the quick-return method described earlier. This First, they are not sequential in time. They may indeed be simultaneous. It is a has not happened to me personally, but I understand it does occur infrequently.

question of “who is doing the perceiving?”

APPENDICES

QUESTION: WHY WOULD SUPER BEINGS AS YOU DESCRIBE

NEED TECHNOLOGY?

They don’t. Putting their activities and ability within this context appears to be one possible way for our left-brained culture to begin to understand what they are doing. Such “technology” is as natural to them as our autonomic system is to us.

We don’t think about our gastrointestinal tract, our circulation system, or our II. The QBE Psychophysiology of Robert A. Monroe

lungs as technology. We just use them without conscious effort, although we now By Stuart W. Twemlow, M.D., and Glen O. Gabbard, M.D.

understand much of the technology involved. Their technology is much the same, relatively, except that they deliberately apply it and

control it.

QUESTION: IS OUR HUMAN TECHNOLOGY A RESULT OF COM-Robert Monroe is a businessman from Virginia, now in his sixties, who is one of MUNICATION WITH SUCH SUPER BEINGS?

the most widely known gifted subjects in the OBE literature. He has written a There is much to support this premise, especially when key figures and events in book cataloguing his out-of-body exploits,* and has founded a private institution human history are objectively studied with this prospect as an alternative to our devoted to the study of such phenomena: the Monroe Institute of Applied Sci-present belief system.

ences in Faber, Virginia. He voluntarily submitted himself to in-depth psychiatric and psychological evaluation several years prior to the publication of this book. He QUESTION: DO CERTAIN TYPES OF FOOD, COFFEE, SMOKING, underwent intensive psychiatric interviewing and a battery of different psychologi-SUGAR, ETC., AID OR INHIBIT OOBS?

cal tests. Monroe has never had psychiatric treatment of any form. He has per-There is no direct correlation either way, based solely upon those laboratory formed at a high level of functioning throughout his career as producer, business-subjects and program participants active with the Institute. We are not aware of man, and entrepreneur.

any reliable in-depth studies on the matter. Moderation may be the

common As we delve into his background, we find that he did not have out-of-body factor, if any.

experiences until the age of forty-two. He had an orthodox Southern upbringing with high-achieving and successful parents. From an early age, Monroe had a QUESTION: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY IS THE NATURE OF GOOD

fascination with flying. He built model planes as a little boy and learned to fly AND EVIL?

airplanes when he was only in high school. Later, he became an accomplished They exist only in the mind of the perceiver, due to ignorance and lack of glider pilot. He was also preoccupied with the thrill of movement and has wonder-understanding plus an immersed viewpoint.

ful memories of riding on trains. Tolpin (1974) has related such intense developmental vicissitude to the grandiose fantasy which she calls “the Daedalus Experi-QUESTION: CAN ONE LIVE TWO LIVES SIMULTANEOUSLY RELAence.” She takes this name, of course, from the myth of Daedalus and Icarus, who TIVE TO TIME?

longed to fly over the sea and created wax wings for themselves to accomplish this This question has been asked of our nonphysical friends, who report that it is task. Icarus, the son of Daedalus, became intoxicated with his ability to fly and not only possible but does take place frequently. We have no further information flew too near the sun. The sun melted the wax on his wings, and he

plunged into about it, how or why it occurs, except that I personally was given the name and the sea as his father, Daedalus, continued on his way. Tolpin postulates that this location of a "second life" I am living—but I have not had the time or the courage myth and the fascination with flying is intimately connected with a certain devel-to verify it, if possible.

opmental period when the infant experiences an ecstatic primal pleasure at being flung about by his mother and father and doting relatives. This archaic grandiose QUESTION: HAVE YOUR RELIGIOUS BELIEFS CHANGED AS A fantasy of defying gravity and flying through the air is normally tamed in the RESULT OF YOUR OOB ACTIVITIES? Yes.

process of maturity and channeled into high achievement and other kinds of sublimatory activities. Tolstoy, for example, leapt out of a window at the age of

* Journeys Out of the Body. Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday & Company, Inc., 1971; Anchor Press edition, 1977.

APPENDICES

nine in an attempt to fly and suffered a concussion. However, he

almost never of a bird or the body of a butterfly or insect, flying upwards toward the top of the relinquished the literal belief that he could fly. He had ecstatic notions about card." Thus, the out-of-body experience in Monroe also serves the function of merging with the moon, which Tolpin relates to the fantasy of mystical merger avoidance of conflict. By transcending the prison of his body, it allows him to steer with his mother, whom he lost at the age of two. This early grandiose notion was, clear of such potential conflict areas as sexuality, depression, and aggression.

of course, channeled into extraordinary mastery and creativity in the area of writ-Observations of Robert Monroe were made by one of us (SWT) and a coling. Winston Churchill had a similar background, and at eighteen jumped off a league, Dr. Fowler Jones of the University of Kansas Medical Center, over a thirty-bridge onto treetops. This early grandiosity was gradually transformed from the minute time period when Monroe was monitored by a Beckman polygraph with realm of action into the realm of thought, as in his stirring speeches, e.g., "We left and right occipital EEG electrodes. He was observed by us through a one-way shall never surrender." Tolpin provides another example of a six-year-old child who window (Twemlow, 1977). Most striking was Monroe's spasmodic breathing with leapt off a merry-go-round in an effort to fly and became furious with his mother periods of apnea. After these apneic periods, the breaths were gulping. Simultane-because he could not. This wish to fly was later transformed into a wish to fly an ously, Dr, Jones and SWT turned to each other and reported the impression of a airplane.

heat wavelike distortion beginning at Monroe's waist, so that it was

difficult to get The fascination with out-of-body “travel” seen in Monroe is likely an adult a clearly focused picture of his upper body, although his lower body was in clear derivative of this Daedalus fantasy. His childhood grandiose wish is transformed focus. Previously, Monroe had stated that he would be able to get out of his body not only into out-of-body experiences as an adult but also into the creation of an quickly but could not signal it, although he could signal within five seconds of institute devoted to the study of these and other esoteric experiences. Hence, in return. This distortion disappeared rather suddenly a little before he roused him-Monroe we see perhaps a more direct translation of the childhood wish to fly into self. At that time his EEG showed a shift in high amplitude patterns to the right an adult form of the grandiose wish. However, he has used this interest adaptively hemisphere with a low amplitude in the left occipital lead.

and productively rather than in a self-destructive or counterproductive way. It may He seemed to wake without anxiety, although he was moderately disoriented in be that this persistent grandiose wish to fly is more likely to be operative as a space for about thirty seconds, with slight slurring of his speech. He could not determinant in those subjects who have the esoteric variety of out-of-body experi-recapture his experience immediately. His GSR level during the session showed an ence, i.e., travels to distant locations and through other realms which are fantastic increase in arousal of approximately 150 microvolts, marked by the total absence of and inexplicable. This determinant may not apply to the more mundane experi-either specific or nonspecific responses during his out-of-body phase. At one point, ences where one simply finds himself floating on the ceiling above his body.

when a technician entered the room to check electrodes, Monroe appeared to be If one of the determinants of Monroe's out-of-body experience is this persistent unaware of his presence, and there was no fluctuation in GSR. The skin of his arm wish to escape the shackles of the earthbound physical form, what are some of the and forearm were dry and warm to the touch. At that time rapid fluttering eye others? His history indicates that he was free from childhood trauma and in fact movements were noted (although eye movements were not measured).

somewhat indulged with creature comforts. His mother, a dynamic and successful Sections of Monroe's EEG during this reported out-of-body experience were physician, had a certain outlook on life which tended to avoid ugliness and un-analyzed for frequency differences both within and between hemispheres. An anal-pleasantness. This attribute also emerges in an analysis of Monroe's personality.

ysis of variance was run, with the data divided into beginning, middle, and end Both Monroe and his mother used the defenses of denial and avoidance to a sections, each section having 29 values for a total of 290 seconds. Two groups were significant extent. These hypomanic defenses against aggression, tragedy, and de-analyzed: right and left hemispheres. There seemed to be no significant frequency structiveness were further demonstrated in projective psychological testing. The differences between hemispheres, although the amplitude differences were obvi-Rorschach tests indicated that Monroe was a man who avoids many aspects of his ous. There were significant differences between the beginning and middle, the internal life. He has strong

defenses against dealing with sexuality, defensive feel-middle and end, and the beginning and end sections of Monroe's EEG in each ings, and especially aggression, all areas of his psyche that he prefers to keep out of hemisphere. This latter difference ($F = 41.47$ and $F = 59.08$; $p < .001$) showed his awareness. He has a pervasive tendency to avoid and detach himself from that the "before" and "after" OBE frequencies were much higher than the "dur-feelings which shows itself in his patterns of thinking, his use of language, and his ing" OBE frequencies. Standard deviations were also significantly smaller with the interpersonal relations. He often simply steers off, away, and tangential to the way middle section as compared to the beginning and end sections. A power spectral others think, feel, perceive, and express themselves. These personality inclinations analysis of OBE periods showed power peaks at 4-5 Hertz with very little activity contribute to the content of what he saw on a particular inkblot, which is often above 10 Hertz.

seen as a bat or a bird. Monroe saw this as "a flying unit, with wings, in the shape What are we to conclude from this experiment? Although the observational 274

APPENDICES

APPENDICES

275

findings were more provocative than the EEG findings, they are less easily ex-preoccupation in the general public with esoteric

faiths and transcendental seek-plained. Clearly, Monroe was in a state of deep relaxation. In addition, when in his ings for the ultimate." There is scant recognition of such areas in the traditional out-of-body state there is a frequency slowing, with an interesting shift in power to psychiatric literature although periodic case reports appear, for example, a case a 4-5 Hertz range in the theta-delta transitional zone. This electrophysiological study of "self-induced depersonalization" by Kennedy.1 It is true that increasing borderline state correlates closely with Tart's findings and Harary's reference to numbers of patients who are involved in movements, such as Transcendental Med-borderline sleep-wakefulness states.

itation, report experiences traditionally classified as psychopathological. These movements emphasize that some of these symptom complexes should not be treated in the way that a symptom is usually treated (e.g., interpretation, medication), but that many of these phenomena should be viewed by the unfamiliar treating physician with "benign neglect" and referred back to the meditation teacher for management. This is because a number of them are usual and expected **III. The Out-of-Body Experience: Phenomenology** accompaniments of changes in cognition, perception, and affect modulation that are expected to occur and are desirable.2,3

By Stuart W. Twemlow, M.D., Glen O. Gabbard, M.D., and Fowler C.

Our two papers summarize a study of one such phenomenon, the out-of-body Jones, Ed.D.

experience (OBE).

The goal of our study is to address the following questions: (1) what is the continuum of phenomenological features which is the "out-of-body" state; (2) how Paper Presented at the 1980 Annual Meeting of the American Psychiatric Asso-does it compare with certain other states of consciousness such as dreaming, life-ciation, May 5-9, in San Francisco

threatening experience, sensory deprivation states, and mystical religious experi-Dr. Twemlow, formerly Chief Research Service, Topeka V.A. Medical Center, ence; (3) how does it relate to pathological states; for example, depersonalization, is now in the private practice of psychiatry, 2145 S.E. Maryland, Topeka, Kans.

autoscopy, and psychosis; (4) what are the short- and long-term effects on the 66605. Dr. Gabbard is Staff Psychiatrist, The Menninger Foundation. Dr. Jones is individual and what does the experience mean to him; (5) what, if any, are the Assistant Professor of Psychiatry, University of Kansas Medical Center.

implications of this phenomena for the practice of psychiatry?

The authors would like to acknowledge Robert Ellsworth, Ph.D., for questionnaire analysis and interpretation; Gary Clark, Ph.D., and Lolafaye Coyne, Ph.D., **Definition of the term "out-of-body experience"**

for statistical consultation.

For the purposes of our survey we chose to define the experience in a very The project was supported in part by the Monroe Institute of Applied Sciences, general way since review of the literature clearly revealed that there is little, if any, Faber, Va.; University of Kansas Medical Center, Department of Psychiatry; The agreement about what characterizes the state phenomenologically, physiologically, Menninger Foundation, Topeka, Kans.

in terms of personality structure, or in terms of significance to the individual. We chose the following definition: “An experience where you felt that your mind or **Precis**

awareness was separated from your physical body.” As with Palmer4 we felt that Descriptive data is presented from 339 subjects who reported out-of-body experi-the only theme in the literature which distinguishes these experiences is a sense of ences in response to an advertisement. The data was analyzed according to pre-location of the total sense of self at some place other than in the physical body.

existing conditions, phenomenological features, and impact of the experience.

We did not feel that it was wise to restrict our definition further at this point until Questions are raised about the etiology of this phenomenon and its meaning to the the experience had been more thoroughly studied. Such a definition, however, individual.

does reflect certain biases on our behalf; explicitly, there are: (1) a belief that with the current state of knowledge, the subject is in a

better position than the investi-

Introduction

gator to decide whether or not he had an out-of-body experience; (2) we wanted to In his 1979 presidential address to the American Psychiatric Association, Dr.

emphasize the sense of location of self-awareness rather than the complex and Jules Masserman noted that one of man's three ultimate seekings is "a system of extremely variable visual and auditory experiences reported in the anecdotal litera-values and mystic beliefs to provide metapsychological serenity." He noted that ture;5 (3) whether or not there is objective laboratory demonstration of a separation there was a growing interest in what he called "metapsychiatry, reflecting a parallel of self-awareness from its normal location in the brain seems not relevant to 276

APPENDICES

the study of the phenomenon from a psychiatric point of view. Although some take reclined on my bed quite awake and was looking at the ceiling beams of the old the position, for example, Osis,6 that such a criterion should be fundamental to the Spanish building where the living quarters were located. I was saying to myself experience, we feel it peripheral to an understanding of its psychological impact many questions such as what was I doing

there and who was I. All of a sudden I and its meaning to the individual, particularly in terms of his value structure and get up from the bed and start walking toward the next room. At that moment I the organization and functioning of his ego. For now, we feel that the experience felt a strange sensation in me; it was a sensation of weightlessness and a strange should be subjectively defined. However, we are very aware of the vast literature on mix of a sense of a feeling of joy. I turned back in my steps in order to go back to perceptual illusion suggesting that such research is enormously subject to bias; for bed when to my big surprise I saw myself reclined on the bed. This surprising example, Orne7 demonstrated that experimental results are directly affected by the experience at that very small age gave me the kind of a jerk which, so to say, shook experimenter's personal belief system.

me back to my body." This example, particularly well exemplifies the ordinary, Attempts such as those of Tart8-9 and Twemlow10 to obtain psychophysiological even mundane, content of the experience, its vivid emotional impact, the sense of correlates of such an experience cannot be said to characterize it even partially a complete functioning self located outside the brain and the considerable surprise adequately, not unlike, for example, trying to describe a whole person using only when the physical body is seen, and the way this anxiety triggers the delicate an EKG. Reported laboratory studies show no stable features, but are suggestive.

balance of the alteration of consciousness causing a restitution of the normal In our own studies10 of the gifted subject Robert Monroe, and in a time series cognitive set of "in-body state."

study of 11 Ss conducted to examine his OBE facilitating technique, one naive subject did show some unusual EEG changes, an occipital EEG pattern most **Taxonomy of OBEs**

similar to an occipital slow wave of sleep variant. Tart8-9 notes, as we do, that EEG

measures in general show a dramatic reduction in neuronal energy in the alpha and As might be expected, all possible classification approaches have been applied to theta band with some unusual patterns not characteristic of REM sleep or other such experiences and each generally begs the question because there is no agree-normal sleep stages.

ment as to what constitutes the OBE. Four possible approaches suggest them-The term “out-of-body experience” was coined by Tart in 1960 primarily to selves:

avoid the judgmental alternative names present in the literature which implied some nonexistent exact knowledge of etiology of the experience, for example, such A classification by natural clustering of phenomena, that is, subjective re terms as astral projection, ESP projection, doubling, astral travel, etc. Some writers ports, the approach addressed in this paper.

feel that out-of-body experience is a specific form of depersonalization, a point to

* Classification by precipitating agents or stressors, that is, the conditions ex be addressed in the third paper of this series. Others

such as Ehrenwald11 empha-isting at the time of the experience, although a cause-effect relationship has never size not only the sense of separation but also the visual accompaniments of what is been established (discussed in this paper).

seen by the self located “outside” the body.

* Classification by psychosocial and psychopathological variables, suggested Following Tart’s generally widely accepted definition of an altered state of con-only anecdotally and being addressed in the second paper in this series. For exam sciousness as a “qualitative alteration in overall pattern of mental functioning, ple, Eastman13 reports OBEs associated with fearful states of mind, states of such that the experiencer feels his consciousness is radically different from the way loneliness, and states of extremely positive mood (ecstatic states).

it functions ordinarily,”12 an adequate definition of OBE might include the fol-

* Classification by analogy. Here is suggested a state of sensory deprivation, lowing points: an altered state of consciousness in which the subject feels that his peak and plateau experiences, and psychopathological states (schizophrenic body mind or self-awareness is separated from his physical body and this self-awareness boundary loss, autoscopy, depersonalization, etc., being addressed in our third has a vivid and real sense about it, quite different from a dream.

paper).

To flesh out this rather abstract definition, a letter was selected from one of approximately 700 describing such experiences received by one of the authors A correct taxonomy may make use of all four approaches, in an attempt to (SWT). This report is an example without many of the dramatic trappings of define pathognomonic features of the experience. Naturally the ultimate value of a those reported in the parapsychological and theosophical literature and is given by taxonomy would depend on what it can explain. Many features of OBEs are most a 52-year-old retired government employee living in Puerto Rico. He says, "When likely explainable by the idiosyncratic effects of precipitants (for example, drugs), I was approximately ten years old I was living together with my older brother at personality and defensive constellations, and cultural factors, including belief sys- my uncle's house, a major in the U.S. Army Medical Corps. One day I was tems.

278

APPENDICES

APPENDICES

279

Surveys of OBE

Method

Few surveys of the incidence of OBEs exist; the earliest was by

Hart in 1954.14

On February 15, 1976, one of the investigators (SWT), in an interview with a He asked 155 students whether they had ever had an OBE. 27.17c of them said national periodical (circulation 15 million on the North American continent), that they had, most of them having had more than one experience. This result is solicited letters from people who thought they might have had an out-of-body not inconsistent with the results of several later surveys. In 1968 Green15 reports experience. Of about 1,500 responses, 700 subjects reported experiences in which the results of asking 380 Oxford undergraduates: “Have you ever had an experi-they thought their consciousness was separated from the physical body. About one ence in which you felt that you were out of your body?” Of these 34% replied year after the interview two multiscale questionnaires (Profile of Out-of-Body Experiences, POBE, and Profile of Adaptation to Life, PAL) were sent to the individ-affirmatively. Palmer and Dennis in 197516 published the first survey using a uals and 420 people returned valid questionnaires. 339 reported OBE experiences, randomly selected group of 1,000 students and townspeople in a small town in while 81 people did not have such experiences, but expressed a strong interest in Virginia. 25% of the students and 14% of the townspeople reported having had learning more about them, and for the purposes of this study were used as a an OBE. A rather original approach to the study of OBEs was that of Shiels,17

comparison group, controlling for high interest in esoteric phenomena.

who collected data on belief in OBEs from nearly 70 non-Western cultures. De-On the POBE questionnaire, items relating to phenomenology were selected spite cultural differences the beliefs were strikingly similar. Shiels felt that this was from the following sources: reports of near-death experiences, mystical religious indirect evidence for an account of a genuine event, the OBE. It is quite well literature describing transcendent states, philosophical-occult psychic literature known, for example, that many cultures attribute to shamans the capacity to fly describing OBE experiences, psychoanalytic and psychiatric data describing states out of the body.18 In fact, a shaman cannot be anointed as such unless he has that of depersonalization, psychotic, autoscopic, and hysterical-dissociative states, and capacity. According to Eliade, such flights express “intelligent understanding of dreaming.

secret things, metaphysical truths, symbolic meaning, transcendence, and free-Five psychological test scales described in our second paper were included to dom.” A South African study,19 analyzing 122 accounts in response to a press distinguish the psychopathological conditions and states traditionally connected request, found that the OBE occurred often while the subject was asleep, relaxed, with a tendency toward alterations in consciousness, for example: “attention absorption.”26

or dozing, and that over 50% of the subjects claimed to have been in a normal Demographic data focused on previous experience with consciousness-altering mental state when the phenomenon occurred.

drugs, hypnosis, and meditative experiences and to determine

some of the back-Anecdotal accounts exist from people already convinced of the veracity and ground belief systems, including religious background and types of reading mate-validity of such experiences.520-24 All contain vivid and exciting descriptions based on rial.

the assumption that an objective separation and independent existence of mind In addition, the PAL questionnaire,27 a well-validated psychological health from body is possible. Many of the reports are interested in what other dimensions scale, was sent to the subjects. This instrument is one of the few available tests of of reality can be explored under these conditions. Eastman13 reported the first psychological health suitable for use in nondisturbed populations. Its health crite-summary of conditions under which OBEs occur; for example, before, during, and ria are largely based on concrete behavioral measures rather than subjective assess-after sleep, during hypnotic trance (not supported subsequently in the literature), ment of mood states.

during illness, drug states, and after shock or accident. The sparse psychiatric literature11 provides elaborate frameworks to explain the experience based on, for Results

example, psychoanalytic theories which usually emphasize defenses against the Of the 339 subjects who reported an experience, 228 (66%) have had more imminence of physical death and various ways to deal with infantile omnipotence.

than one such experience, while 117 (34%) have had only one. 74 subjects have Thus OBEs are often seen as unconscious attempts

to portray aspects of man’s had more than 10 OBEs. A. PRE-EXISTING CONDITIONS

eternal quest for immortality. Literature from philosophical and psychic sources, Table 1 summarizes the conditions remembered to exist at the time OBE

however, use the OBE to classify people as more or less spiritual (which usually occurred. Of course, no cause-effect relationship necessarily occurs between these means psychologically healthy and/or with ESP ability) based on the type and conditions and the experience itself, although such has been implied by a number of authors.28 An overwhelming majority of the sample were in a relaxed and calm nature of their OBE.25

APPENDICES

state of mind (79%), and the variety of emotionally stressful conditions (23% of The use of drugs and alcohol had a low incidence in this population. A study of the sample), and states of physical pain, drug and alcohol intoxication, childbirth, marijuana users30 showed that 44% of the marijuana users had had at least one and general anesthetic accounted for much smaller percentages of the sample. The OBE. Our population is a lot older (mean age

45 years) than Tart's, and the drugs finding that this experience is not usually associated with illness or stress compares reported used by our subjects were not classifiable, ranging from antihypertensives with similar findings by Crookall,28 who found four out of his five subjects normal through vitamin pills and antibiotics. Only four subjects reported using psyche-and well. He attempted to classify OBEs based on those occurring under stress delic drugs (LSD and marijuana) at the time of the experience.

(physical or mental) and those occurring under nonstressful conditions. Compar-Individual descriptions of the type of emotional stress totaled 74 reports. Striking these findings with those of Green,15 those who had one OBE only were ing were the themes of loss, mourning, and loneliness represented in 21 of the characteristically people under some identifiable stress prior to the experience, subjects; threats of death, including illness, being in a war zone, pre-surgery, and especially physical trauma. In our sample, an analysis of the top and bottom 25%

cancer in 20; marital and family problems in 12; and the remainder miscellaneous, for frequency of OBEs utilizing univariate independent group f-tests failed to find including unspecified tension states. When the descriptions were reviewed from any precondition reaching the level of $p < .01$. The bottom 25% of the sample the point of view of those who had had one OBE only ($n = 33$) and those who reported more spontaneous OBEs, that is, those occurring without effort to leave had more than one ($n = 41$), 21.7% of the one OBE sample reported stress the body, significantly more frequently than the top 25%($df = 62$, $p < .01$). A involving loss, mourning, and loneliness, compared with 34.2% of

those who had small but intensive study of 10 subjects* reports that states of mental calm were had more than one OBE. Similarly, Eastman13 reports the sense of loneliness as mentioned 20 times more frequently in subjects with multiple OBEs. Single OBE

quite frequent at the time of OBE and such findings may be seen to support subjects reported psychological stress only three times in the sample. Most of the theories that place emphasis on defensive methods of adapting to threat of loss or pundits of parapsychological literature recommend a physically relaxed state1022

damage to the ego.

from their own personal experiences. OBE occurring during dreaming is distinA question was asked to explore why the individual wanted to have an OBE and guished emphatically by subjects as being “more real than a dream” in the majority revealed some interesting findings. Of 91 classifiable responses, 19 (20.9%) were of cases. Flying and falling dreams, quite common in childhood, comprise a simply interested for curiosity or fun, 21 (23.1%) were members of a psychical majority of the dreams occurring at the time the OBE is noted. It was of interest research or study group, 23 (25.3%) were involved in personal, existential explora-to us the certitude with which the subjects emphasize that they knew the differtions associated with major developmental stages, and in 28 (30.7%) the experience between a dream state and an OBE state.

ence was entirely spontaneous and unexpected. Only 10% of the

sample had Subjects who were in a state of mental calmness at the time of the OBE tended previously attended workshops on OBEs and it was significant that approximately to have a significantly greater proportion of meditators ($df = 178$, $p < .0001$) one-third of the sample had not expected in any way to have such an experience than those who were not in such a state of mental calmness; otherwise no other and did not admit at least to expecting or even knowing about such experiences.

preconditions significantly separated this group. Subsequent multivariate analyses B. NATURE OF THE EXPERIENCE

of this data will be conducted to determine any cluster emerging from the precon-Table 2 summarizes a number of phenomenological features of the experience.

ditions listed. Life-threatening experiences as described by Stevenson and The first six features, occurring in more than 50% of the subjects, do not show the Greyson29 have given rise to a prevalent opinion in the literature that OBEs are more esoteric aspects described in the literature but describe a simple subjective frequently associated with severe illness, threat to life, either internal (psychotic) perceptual experience of great vividness and reality, showing not only a sense of or external (physical). Can such near-death experiences be separately characterized separation of the total self from its normal location in the head but also being from out-of-body experiences? Another study will summarize this in more detail,*

aware that this self exists in the same environment as the physical

body, which can However, certain characteristics of the out-of-body experience itself allow a dis-be clearly seen and is associated with a feeling of unusual “energy” and a desire to crimination between nonstress OBE and those that occur while under stress (emo-return to the body.

tional and that posed by imminent death). A Chit test of associations showed that As might be expected, some of the more vivid and detailed phenomenological the following experiences are more common in combined subjects (near death and features were overrepresented in the top 25% of the sample. For example, using under emotional stress): (1) experience of going through a dark tunnel ($p < .05$); independent group t-tests, the following features were more common in the top (2) brilliant light experience ($p < .001$); (3) observation of a border or limit 25%: a sense of energy ($df = 94$, $p < .0005$), noises, particularly roaring noises ($p < .002$); (4) a sense of some attachment to the physical body ($p < .05$); (5) a ($df = 39$, $p < .0005$), vibrations ($df = 97$, $p < .01$), seeing the body from a dis-panoramic vision of images of dead relatives and friends ($p < .05$).

tance ($df = 97$, $p < .005$), a sense of being able to pass through objects ($df = 93$, 282

APPENDICES

APPENDICES

$p < .00006$), awareness of the presence of nonphysical beings ($df = 96$, tial questions, for instance: “to show me everything is possible,” “to show me new $p < .005$), and seeing a brilliant light ($df = 96$, $p < .002$).

possibilities or new realities.” These accounts reflected a preponderance (85%) of These findings show some differences from the major surveys reported in the subjects who were dealing with issues associated with major life changes and re-literature. For example, Crookall,31 in an analysis of anecdotal reports from 380

quiring much introspection, review, and assessment of personal strengths and subjects, found a high representation of people who felt connected to their bodies weaknesses. DISCUSSION

by a cord, who see other apparitions during the experiences, and who demonstrate Even without reviewing the widely recognized defects of the questionnaire ap-ESP during the experience, none of which were significantly represented in our proach, this study has a number of added defects, including the fact that many of population. However, some of his major findings—for example, the subject being the experiences are remembered from many years before. Structuring the ques-able to see his own body from a new and spatially independent vantage point, tionnaire in a directive way added forced-choice features; however, the questions finding himself in a form similar to his physical body, and feeling the “other body”

were forced-choice to aid in quantifying data but the sacrifice, of course, is obvi-tends to float—were supported in our study. Our

findings correspond more closely ous. Although a large number of questions were asked, this approach suffers from a with those of Celia Green,15 who found that practically none of her correspon- lack of detailed individualized protocols. In an attempt to remedy this defect, dents saw a cord. C. IMPACT OF THE EXPERIENCE

extensive psychological testing has been done on a selected sample of 100 of these As seen in Table 3, a majority of the subjects had remarkably positive experi-subjects, a random cross section of whom will be personally interviewed and re-ences. What is striking is the use of superlative adjectives in the reports. By no ported in future studies. The generalizability of this data is aided by the semi-means was this experience ordinary and in 60% of the sample was life-changing.

random nature of the study and the anonymity of respondents. The study popula-Even those who experienced the OBE as extremely frightening, or giving sensation is highly representative of the general population at large; separate research, tions of great power, on a Chit test of association were not significantly related to for the Profile of Adaptation to Life Scale, compared a number of different popula-mean scores on the Hysteroid and Psychoticism scales, suggesting that the experitions, including college students, Transcendental Meditators, professionals, and ence itself neither occurred in particularly sick people nor had a pathological psychiatric patients to arrive at norms for the test. It was found that our OBE

impact. 85% termed it “a very pleasant experience.”

group was the “norm” group, representing a broad range of educational age and T-tests revealed, as would be expected, that those who were in a state of mental geographic characteristics as well as having a good psychological and physical calmness at the time of the OBE experienced more positive moods both during adjustment.27 The 280 nonrespondents to the questionnaire cast some doubt on and after the experience. Mood states such as joy ($df = 304$, $p < .01$), freedom how generalizable our data is even to the OBE population. However, about 100 of ($df = 309$, $p < .008$), calm, peace and quiet ($df = 90$, $p < .0002$) were experi-the questionnaires were undeliverable and there was a one-year unavoidable time enced much more frequently than in those who had feelings of fear during the delay between the published interview and the mailing of the questionnaires.

experience. 7”-test comparisons also revealed the fact that those who were mentally As one reviews our results as an attempt to delineate the phenomenology of the calm had more detailed and vivid experiences than those who experienced fear at OBE, this study adds a number of major features to the understanding of the the time of the OBE, for example, senses of energy ($df = 312$, $p < .02$), vibra-experience. An old theosophical tract34 used the concept of “thought form.” In tions ($df = 322$, $p < .01$), feelings that people not out of the body were aware of the general case the OBE is a typical “thought form,” the question really being: their presence ($df = 155$, $p < .008$). In the mentally calm group the experience What form does this thinking take? We have elected not to address the issue of was seen as having a more lasting and dramatic impact on life; for example, it was whether mind really separates from the physical body, but our research has raised

described as a spiritual or religious experience ($df = 302$, $p < .01$), an experience in our minds fundamental questions about the nature of what is “really real.” In of great beauty and lasting benefit ($df = 301$, $p < .0003$), and effected a change addition to the sense of separation of mind from body, what becomes apparent toward a belief in survival after death ($df = 313$, $p < .01$).

from the survey is that total mind, perhaps best referred to as “sense of whole The data is quite reminiscent of the categories used to describe peak and pla-

self,” is separated. There is visually no self-awareness in the body. The whole self, teau experiences32 and mystical religious experiences:33 for example, the sense of including observing and experiencing ego functions, is located at a point in percep-unity, transcendence of time and space, sense of objectivity and reality, a noetic tual space other than the brain, with the physical body being seen as inert and and sacred quality, a deep positive mood state, and a quality of ineffability.

“thoughtless.” There is no clouding of consciousness as is reported in hypnogogic, Subjects who described a sense of purpose to the experience in general indicated hypnopompic, and dream, including lucid dream states; in fact, consciousness is that the experience enabled them to obtain closure on some of the major existen-felt to be quite clear. A most striking finding reported by subjects is the absolute 284

APPENDICES

certainty that they were not dreaming, whether or not the experience occurred when quite aroused; for example, when in severe pain or, as in the majority of cases, in a resting state. Those who are fearful, frightened, or in pain when they have this experience tend to have a much more negative reaction to it and, as might be expected, utilize it for much less extensive attitudinal change, and the References

experience remains less vivid in the memory. Future studies will further differenti-ate the latter group, which might be experiences of depersonalization. Far from being primarily attributes of illness, painful or toxic states, the majority of these experiences occur often when the person is least expecting them and when quite

* Kennedy, R. B. “Self-induced Depersonalization Syndrome.” Am. J. Psychia relaxed. Theories such as those of Palmer35 emphasize the importance of reduction try, 133: 1326-28, 1976.

*

in proprioceptive input in the physically relaxed state akin to sensory deprivation.

Twemlow, S. W. Discussion of A Psychoanalytic Theory of Altered States of Consciousness by Erika Fromm. Bull. Menninger Clinic, 42(6): 538-40, 1978.

As the brain receives less proprioceptive and other sensory input, the ego

* Twemlow, S. W., and Bowen, W. T. “Psychedelic Drug-Induced Psychologi theoretically becomes able to relax reality testing. Regressive components of the cal Crises: Attitudes of the ‘Crisis Therapist.’ ” Journal Psychedelic Drugs, OBE seem to occur in the 22% of patients who are reminded of childhood 11(4): 331-35, 1979.

experiences; thus it is tempting to invoke the psychoanalytic concept of regression

* Palmer, J., and Vassar, C. “ESP and Out-of-the-Body Experiences: An Explor in the service of the ego. But the question remains: What is the service, both from atory Study.” /. Amer. Society for Psychical Research, 68(3): 257, 277, 1974.

a defensive as well as an adaptive synthetic viewpoint? There is no need to find a

* Muldoon, S., and Carrington, H. The Phenomenon of Astral Projection. New single cause for OBEs. Multideterminism is a widely accepted concept in psychia-York: Samuel Weiser, Inc., 1970.

try. Thus our approach to the etiology of OBE is to consider there to be contribu-

* Osis, K. “Perspectives for Out of Body Research.” In W. G. Roll,

R. L.

tions from different levels of explanation.

Morris, and J. D. Morris (eds.), Research in Parapsychology. Metuchen, N.J.: Each OBE experience might thus be determined by a number of factors (psy-Scarecrow Press, 1973.

chopathological, toxic/organic, evolutionary, developmental, and perceptual-cogni-

* Orne, M. T. "On the Social Psychology of the Psychology Experiment: With tive), each making a contribution. The same individual would likely have a differ-particular reference to demand characteristics and their implications." Ameri ent etiological combination under different circumstances and the experience can Psychologist, 17: 776-83, 1962.

would have a different impact. This concept is elaborated in a paper we have in

* Tart, C. T. "A Psychophysiological Study of Out of the Body Experiences in a preparation. t

Selected Subject."J. Amer. Society for Psychical Research, 62: 3-27, 1968.

*

In the Republic, Plato delineates four levels of experiential reality:

imaginary, Tart, C. T. “A Second Psychophysiological Study of Out of the Body Experi ences in a Gifted Subject.” International Journal of Parapsychology, 9: 251-58, physical, conceptual, and direct transcendental cognition, which he calls direct 1967.

seeing or “the Good.” In the story of Er (Republic, 616-17) the story is told of a

* Twemlow, S. W. In Journeys Out of the Body by Robert A. Monroe. Garden valiant man, Er, who died in battle and who later revived and told a story whereby City, N.Y.: Anchor Books, 1977, pp. 275-80.

his soul had departed from him. Plato claims something utterly alien to the mod-

* Ehrenwald, J. “Out-of-the-Body Experiences and the Denial of Death.” /

ern mentality; he says that only after death, when we are free of bodily influence, Nervous & Mental Disease, 159(4): 227-33, 1974.

shall we know the whole crux of being. Plato feels that freeing the psyche from the

* Tart, C. T. “States of Consciousness and State Specific Sciences.” In R. E.

body is an essential condition for the philosophic journey to ultimate wisdom. As Ornstein (ed.), The Nature of Human

Consciousness. San Francisco: W. H.

indicated by Grosso,36,37 monistic materialism has collapsed the architecture of Freeman, 1973.

being to a one-level affair: the really real world of sense experience. The middle

* Eastman, M. “Out-of-the-Body Experiences.” Proceedings of the Society for kingdom, the unreal domain of dreams, the flimsiest form of epiphenomena, per-

Psychical Research, 53(193): 187-309, 1962.

haps the collective asylum of artists and the mad, may teach us to be less dogmatic

* Hart, H. “ESP Projection: Spontaneous Cases and the Experimental in the way we toss about epithets like “real.” It may help us to open up to more Method.”J. Amer. Society for Psychical Research, 48: 121-46, 1954.

multilevel ontologies.

*

Green, C. Out-of-the-Body Experiences. London: Hamish Hamilton, 1968.

APPENDICES

* Palmer, }., and Dennis, M. “A Community Mail. Survey of Psychic Experi

* Palmer, J. “The Out-of-Body Experience: A Psychological Theory.” Parapsy ences in Research in Parapsychology.” Metuchen, N.J.: Scarecrow Press, chology Review, Sept.-Oct, 19-22, 1978.

1975.

* Grosso, M. “Plato and Out-of-the-Body Experiences.” /. Amer. Society for

* Shiels, D. “A Cross-cultural Study of Beliefs in Out of the Body Experiences.”

Psychical Research, 69: 61-74, 1975.

/. Amer. Society for Psychical Research, 49: 697-741, 1978.

* Grosso, M. “Some Varieties of Out-of-Body Experiences.” /. Amer. Society for

* Eliade, M. Shamanism: Archaic Technique of Ecstasy. Princeton,

N.J.: Prince Psychical Research, 70: 179-93, 1976.

ton University Press, 1972.

* Poynton, J. “Results of an Out of the Body Survey.” In J. Poynton (ed), Parapsychology in South Africa. Johannesburg: South African Society for Psychical Research, 1975.

* Landau, L. “An Unusual Out of the Body Experience.” /. Amer. Society for Psychical Research, 42: 126-28, 1963.

Table 1 Pre-existing Conditions

* Muldoon, S., and Carrington, H. The Projection of the Astral Body. London: Rider & Co., 1929.

Frequencies

*

Muldoon, S. The Case for Astral Projection. Chicago: Aries

Attribute

Present

Absent

% Present

Press, 1936.

263

70

79

* Stratton, F. J. M. “An Out of the Body Experience Combined with ESP.”

Physically relaxed

261

69

79

Letter to the Editor,J. Amer. Society for Psychical Research, 39: 92-97, 1957.

Mentally calm

*

117

211

36

Whiteman, J. H. “The Process of Separation and Return in Experiences Fully Dreaming*

88

241

27

Out of the Body.” Proceedings of the Society for Psychical Research, 50: 240-Meditating

74

250

23

74, 1956.

Under emotional stress

51

279

15

* Crookall, R. “Astral Projection.” Light: A Journal of Psychic Studies, 194—

Unusually fatigued

34

298

10

200, 1970,

Near death

17

313

5

* Tellegan, A., and Alkinson, G. “Openness to Absorbing and Self-Altering Cardiac arrest

26

300

8

Experiences (‘Absorption’): A trait related to hypnotic susceptibility.” /. Ab Drug

20

312

6

normal Psychology, 53: 368-77, 1974.

General anesthetic

21

307

6

* Ellsworth, R. B. Profile of Adaptation to Life Holistic Scale. Institute for Severe pain

14

316

4

Program Evaluation, P.O. Box 4654, Roanoke, Va. 24015, 1979.

Childbirth!

13

318

4

* Crookall, R. The Study and Practice of Astral Projection. New Hyde Park, Accident

11

320

3

High fever

NT.: University Books, Inc., 1960.

11

322

3

*

Sexual orgasm

Stevenson, I,, and Greyson, B. “Near-Death Experiences: Relevance to the 5

328

2

Alcohol

Question of Survival After Death.” J.A.M.A., 243(3): 165-67, 1979.

8

324

2

*

Driving a vehicle

Tart, C. T. On Being Stoned: A Psychological Study of Marijuana Intoxica tion. Palo Alto: Science & Behavior Books, 1971.

* In 97 S

*

s (83%), the dream was described as a “flying or falling” dream.

Crookall, R. Out of the Body Experiences: A Fourth Analysis. New Hyde Park, f52.5% sample were female.

N.Y.: University Books, Inc., 1970.

* Maslow, A. H. Religions, Values and Peak Experiences. New York: The Vi king Press, 1970.

* James, W. The Varieties of Religious Experience. New York: Crowell-Collier, 1961.

* Besant, A., and Leadbeater, C. W. Thought-forms. New York, London, and Benares: The Theosophical Publishing Society, 1905.

APPENDICES

APPENDICES

Table 2 Nature of the Experience

Table 3 Impact of the Experience

Frequencies

Frequencies

Attribute

Present

Absent

% Present

During

Yes

No

% Yi

More real than a dream

315

19

94

Calm, peace, quiet

281

90

72

Form similar to physical

Freedom

215

103

68

body

232

73

76

Sense of purpose

182

115

63

Same environment as

Joy

173

139

55

physical body

197

123

62

No special feelings

91

161

36

Sense of energy

177

145

55

Fear

111

209

35

Wanted to return to body

164

138

54

Power

89

218

29

Saw physical body from

Sadness

39

267

13

distance

171

162

51

Going crazy

15

294

5

Passed through objects

155

157

50

Vibrations in body

128

204

38

Immediately After

Heard noises in early

stages*

71

123

37

Became interested in

Part of awareness still in

psychic phenomona

266

46

85

body

120

203

37

Talked about it to others

242

85

74

Awareness of presence of

Curious

232

95

71

nonphysical beings t

121

209

37

Felt life changed

188

127

60

Change in time sense

107

220

33

Spiritual experience

174

145

55

Brilliant white light t

96

225

30

Felt he possessed psychic

Presence of guides or

abilities

helpers

85

238

26

136

180

43

Ordinary event

Tunnel experience

85

242

26

120

195

38

Attached to physical body

Confused

68

259

21

87

233

27

Able to touch objects

54

251

18

Kept it secret

77

237

25

Person not out of body

Upset and frightened

80

242

25

aware of presence

45

277

14

Forgot about it

20

295

6

Sense of border/limit

44

279

14

Going crazy

15

304

5

Panoramic vision

14

313

4

Longer-Term Effect

* A variety were reported, the most common being buzzing (29%), roaring Like to try again

284

34

89

(19%), music or singing (16%).

t In 19% were people close to the subject, but who had already died. t 46%

Developed greater

sample found the light strongly attractive; 33% felt it was a being.

awareness of reality

281

47

86

APPENDICES

About the Author

Frequencies

Robert Allan Monroe is a man of many talents. More Yes

No

% Yes

important, he has the ability to explore and experience these different Very pleasant

273

47

85

facets that make up an unusual personality.

Lasting benefit

240

67

78

The son of a college professor and a medical doctor mother, he received Change toward a belief in

his degree from Ohio State University after studies in engineering and life after death

215

109

66

journalism, and entered the radio broadcasting industry as a writer and Great beauty

208

112

65

director of programs. In 1939 he went to New York, where he was the Like traveling to far-off land

165

149

53

creator and producer of some 400 radio and TV network programs in the The greatest thing that ever

happened

136

177

43

ensuing twenty-year period. In addition to directing and writing, he com-Reminiscent of childhood

posed all of the orchestral music for his programs, much of which is still in experiences

68

248

22

use in television and motion pictures.

Disappointing

20

299

6

His first radio network program was Rocky Gordon, a railroad adventure Like being drunk or high

20

297

6

series which for several years preceded the famous Lowell Thomas-Amos Mentally harmful

7

313

2

‘n‘ Andy program block on NBC. Some of the other network program series he created and produced were High Adventure (George Sanders), Nightmare (Peter Lorre), Starlight Theatre (Madeleine Carroll), Scramble (Bob Ripley), M-G-M Screen Test, and the quiz shows Take a Number and Meet Your Match.

After an early sojourn at Donahue and Coe, Advertising, he formed Notes

Robert Monroe Productions, which at the peak of its operations

was producing as many as twenty-eight radio network shows weekly. He later became vice-president of programs and director of Mutual Broadcasting

* Ironson, D. S. “An Investigation into the Preconditions, Characteristics, and Beliefs Associated with the Out-of-the-Body Experience.” Unpublished doctoral System, Inc., a position he held until mid-1956. He then became presi-dissertation, 1975. t Gabbard, G. O., Twemlow, S. W., and Jones, F. “Do Near Death dent of Laury Associates, which brought him into ownership and opera-Experiences

tion of radio stations in North Carolina and Virginia. He also formed Occur Only When Near Death?” Submitted for publication 1980; preprint Jefferson Cable Corporation, which, as president, he guided in the con-available from the corresponding author. t Twemlow, S. W., and Gabbard, G. O. “The struction and operation of cable-TV systems in Charlottesville and OBE as an Overdetermined State

of Consciousness.” Manuscript available from the corresponding author.

Waynesboro, Virginia—a position he held until April 1976.

Mr. Monroe’s major avocation in recent years has been exploration and research into practical methods of accelerated learning through expanded forms of consciousness. To augment such activity, he founded the Monroe Institute of Applied Sciences in 1973, with facilities and laboratories at Afton, Virginia. With his long and

varied experience in sound, it was natural that he utilized this medium for his investigation. One of the results of his work was a method and technique of inducing relaxation and sleep, which was granted a generic patent in 1975. The technique employs a system of audio pulses which create a frequency-following response in the human brain. By this method, it is now possible to hold and maintain specific stages of sleep for any depth and duration in the average person. A later development at the Institute has utilized the same methods and technique in a form of "binaural beats" to create synchronization of both left and right hemispheres in the human brain. The unique coherent brain state that results is known as hemispheric synchronization, or "Hemi-Sync." This discovery also permits external control of the degree of activity of either right or left brain. These two patterns, when employed in an ordered sequence to achieve specific effects, offer a significant gateway to new understanding and application of human thought and endeavor.

Along with others, the Monroe Institute (now located in Nelson County, Virginia) is exploring the potentials of such methods in all areas of individual and cultural activity.

Mr. Monroe, as executive director and founder of the Institute, still plays an active part in this educational-research organization. He is author of the book Journeys Out of the Body (Doubleday & Company, Inc., 1971; Anchor Press edition, 1977), which has been published in five languages worldwide. With his family, he lives on his farm in Nelson County, Virginia, near the Institute headquarters.